



## SWIFT for Corporates

# Standards MT Messages Implementation Guide

## Volume II - Trade Finance Standards

This document describes the rules you must follow when you send or receive MT 798 messages for Trade Finance using SWIFTNet FIN in SCORE (Standardised Corporate Environment).

|

[April 2022](#)[Feb](#)[July 2023](#)



# Table of Contents

<b>Table of Contents .....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Preface.....</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>1 General Information .....</b>	<b>5</b>
1.1 Versions of Implementation Guide .....	5
1.2 Effective Date .....	5
1.3 General Information on BICs.....	5
1.4 General Information on IBANs .....	5
1.5 About this Implementation Guide – Version 5.....	6
<b>2 Trade Finance Standards.....</b>	<b>7</b>
2.1 Import Documentary Credit Transactions .....	29
2.1.1 Application for Documentary Credit.....	32
2.1.2 Notification of Draft or Issuance of Documentary Credit.....	61
2.1.3 Request for Amendment of Documentary Credit.....	73
2.1.4 Notification of Amendment of Documentary Credit.....	94
2.1.5 Notification of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment.....	104
2.1.6 Advice of Discrepancy .....	110
2.1.7 Response to Advice of Discrepancy .....	123
2.1.8 Notification of Advice of Payment/Acceptance/Negotiation .....	129
2.1.9 Notification of Advice of Discharge .....	136
2.1.10 Notification of Advice of Refusal .....	147
2.1.11 Notification of Advice of Reimbursement or Payment .....	156
2.1.12 Settlement of Import Documentary Credit .....	163
2.2 Export Documentary Credit Transactions .....	173
2.2.1 Advice of Documentary Credit.....	177
2.2.2 Advice of Amendment or Confirmation of Documentary Credit.....	189
2.2.3 Advice of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment.....	201
2.2.4 Advice of Third Bank Documentary Credit.....	208
2.2.5 Response to Documentary Credit Presentation .....	224
2.2.6 Response to Advice of Discrepant Presentation .....	231
2.2.7 Notification of Authorisation to Pay, Accept or Negotiate .....	238
2.2.8 Notification of Advice of Payment/Acceptance/Negotiation .....	246
2.2.9 Notification of Advice of Discharge .....	246
2.2.10 Notification of Advice of Refusal .....	246
2.2.11 Notification of Advice of Reimbursement or Payment .....	246
2.2.12 Request for Transfer of a Documentary Credit.....	247
2.2.13 Advice of Transfer of a Documentary Credit.....	255
2.2.14 Notification of Transfer of a Documentary Credit.....	274
2.2.15 Settlement of Export Documentary Credit .....	285
2.3 Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Transactions.....	296
2.3.1 Application for Issuance of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit.....	302
2.3.2 Notification of Draft or Issue of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit .....	330
2.3.3 Request for Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit.....	347
2.3.4 Notification of Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit.....	364
2.3.5 Response to Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit .....	374
2.3.6 Advice of Acceptance / Refusal of Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit.....	383
2.3.7 Advice of issued Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit.....	391
2.3.8 Advice of amended Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit .....	404
2.3.9 Query to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit .....	415
2.3.10 Response to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit .....	423

---

2.3.11	Notification of Non-Extension of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit .....	429
2.3.12	Demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit.....	439
2.3.13	Demand refusal advice under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit.....	450
2.3.14	Acknowledgment of demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit..	460
2.3.15	Notification of demand for payment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit.....	465
2.3.16	Settlement of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit claim for payment and/or charges..	473
2.3.17	Request for Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Reduction / Release.....	485
2.3.18	Advice of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Reduction or Release .....	492
2.4	Common Group Messages .....	502
2.4.1	Response to a Draft Undertaking .....	505
2.4.2	Request for Cancellation .....	513
2.4.3	Notification of Cancellation / Refusal.....	519
2.4.4	Notification of Settlement of Charges .....	525
2.4.5	Request for Settlement of Charges .....	533
2.4.6	Free Format Message – Corporate-to-Bank.....	541
2.4.7	Free Format Message – Bank-to-Corporate.....	547
2.4.8	Ancillary Message – Corporate-to-Bank .....	553
2.4.9	Ancillary Message – Bank-to-Corporate .....	561
	<b>Legal Notices .....</b>	.

---

# Preface

## Purpose of this document

The purpose of this document is to document how the FIN standards related to Trade Finance must be implemented and used between corporates and financial institutions. It sets out those standards (also called Message Types or MTs) that are suitable for this purpose and provides usage rules and guidelines to ensure their consistent implementation.

Participants in the SCORE service are expected to adhere to the rules in this document. Where messages are exchanged in a MA-CUG or other SWIFT environment, adherence to these rules must not be assumed.

---

**Note** SCORE participants are not required to support all messages, all message functionality and usage in this document, but where they do, these rules must be followed.

---

This guide is not a standards handbook. The detailed description of the FIN standards can be obtained from the SWIFT User Handbooks, Category Volumes. Where applicable, this guide refers to those handbooks.

## Document structure

The Standards MT Messages Implementation Guide is published in two volumes:

- **Volume I:** Cash Management, Treasury Markets, and Securities Standards
- **Volume II:** Trade Finance Standards

Volume II is structured as follows:

- **Section 1:** provides information about the notions of BIC (Business Identifier Code) and the IBAN (International Bank Account Number) and important information to correctly use the messages.
- **Section 2:** deals with trade finance standards (CAT 7)

Wherever possible, business scenarios and examples are provided to best illustrate how the standards must be used.

This document uses the following typographical conventions:

<b>Bold</b>	Names of files, parameters, API calls, user logon, and logon groups References to a directory or a menu GUI elements and command names
<i>Italics</i>	Important information and document names
Courier	User input, directory paths, parameter values, place holders, and system output examples

# 1 General Information

## 1.1 Versions of Implementation Guide

The following table lists the versions of the Trade Finance Standards Implementation Guide that have been published:

Version	Date
Version 1	May 2008
Version 2	November 2008
Version 3	August 2010
Version 4	December 2012
Version 5	July 2017
Version 5.1	March 2018
Version 5.1.1	May 2018
Version 5.2	September 2019
Version 5.2.1	November 2019
Version 5.2.2	February 2020
Version 5.2.3	June 2020
Version 5.2.4	April 2022
<u>Version 5.3</u>	<u>February 2023 (latest)</u>
<u>Version 5.3.1</u>	<u>July 2023 (latest)</u>

## 1.2 Effective Date

Version 5.3.12.4 contains information effective as of 1<sup>st</sup> June 2022 Nov 2023. It replaces all previous versions of the Implementation Guide.

This version provides a workaround for the issue related to field 77E. The length of the field 77E has been extended to 145z characters.

More details can be found in the KB tip #5026164 found here -

[https://www2.swift.com/knowledgecentre/kb\\_articles/5026164?protected=true&reload-date=1688708594192](https://www2.swift.com/knowledgecentre/kb_articles/5026164?protected=true&reload-date=1688708594192)

## 1.3 General Information on BICs

A BIC (Business Identifier Code) is an identifier that is assigned to all SWIFT FIN-connected financial and non-financial institutions. It can also be used to identify other institutions, not connected to the SWIFT FIN network. The scope of this code was extended in 2009 to identify non-financial organisations, including corporates and its name was changed from "Bank Identifier Code" to "Business Identifier Code". The current version of the ISO 9362 Standard is from 2014.

The SWIFT FIN network validates all party fields in the interbank FIN messages on the presence of the appropriate BIC.

## 1.4 General Information on IBANs

For accounts serviced in countries that have implemented IBAN (International Bank Account Number), the IBAN should be used to identify the account, regardless of the message type.

## 1.5 About this Implementation Guide – Version 5

### Implementation Dates

The V5.3.14.2 for LCs, guarantees/standby LCs and common messages is available for implementation as on 1<sup>st</sup> June 2022..Nov 2023.

### MT 700 (and related MTs) Usage for Standby LCs

Before SR 2021, the MT 700, MT 705, MT 710 and MT 720 can be used to issue, advise or transfer a standby LC and the MT 707 is used to amend a standby LC. As of SR 2021 (in November), the “standby” codes in these messages will be removed, the redesigned and structured MT 760 must then be used to issue standby LCs and the MT 767 must be used to amend a standby LC.

### Double Index Messages in Guarantees/standby LCs Messages

The guarantee and standby LC instruments that were previously represented as separate MT 798 sub-message types have now been merged into single combined MT 798 sub-message types. This aligns with the combined approach adopted in the corresponding release of the Category 7 messages for guarantees and standby LCs and with the ISO 20022 equivalent messages.

### Category 7 Interbank Message Field Removal Guidelines

When an actual interbank MT, sent or received, is included in an MT 798 flow, and sent to a corporate, certain fields that are specific to the bank-to-bank communication and have no relevance to the corporate, may be removed.

In particular (but not exhaustively):

- 72Z: Sender to Receiver Information
- 49H: Special Payment Conditions for Bank Only
- 78: Instructions to the Paying/Accepting/Negotiating Bank
- Bank Accounts
- Bank Charges
- 23X File Identification
- Interbank references

### Category 7 Interbank Message Formats Included in This Guide

The format of included category 7 interbank messages has been listed in this guide for the convenience of the reader. Please note that the format is the SR 2023.4 format. When changes are implemented in future Standards Releases of interbank messages, they must also be implemented, at the same time, as part of the MT 798 flows.

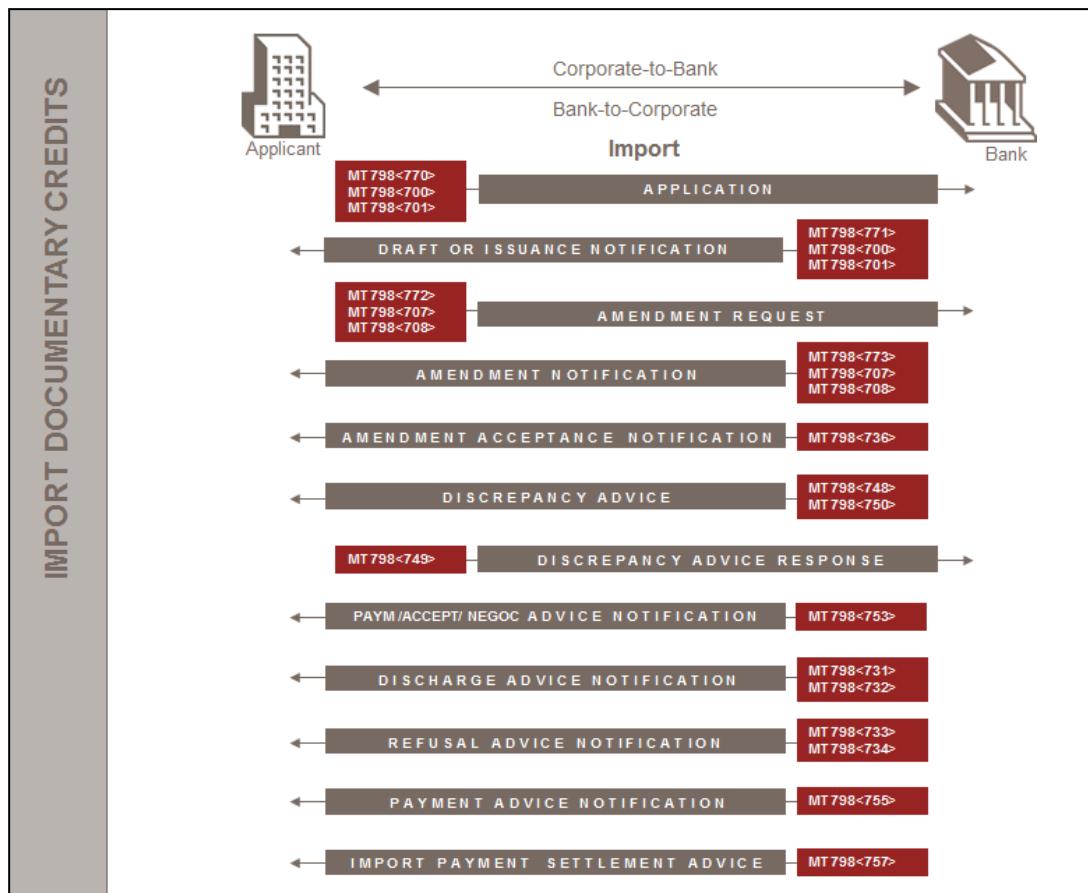
## 2 Trade Finance Standards

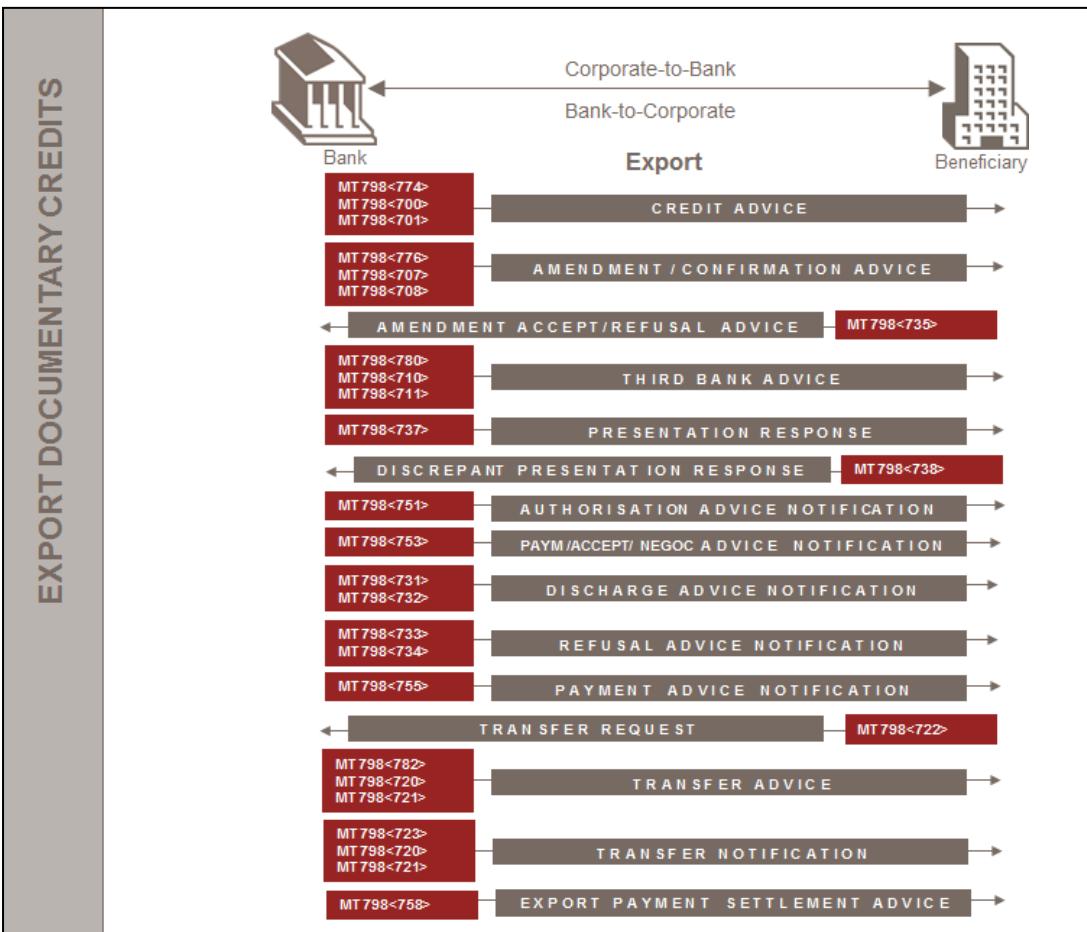
SWIFT offers a range of FIN standards - also called Message Types (MTs) – for Trade Finance, the Category 7 types support the processing of Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit in a bank-to-bank environment.

In order to reuse these message types, without technical change, in a corporate-to-bank and bank-to-corporate environment, the implementation guidelines specified herein must be followed.

### Documentary Credit Flows

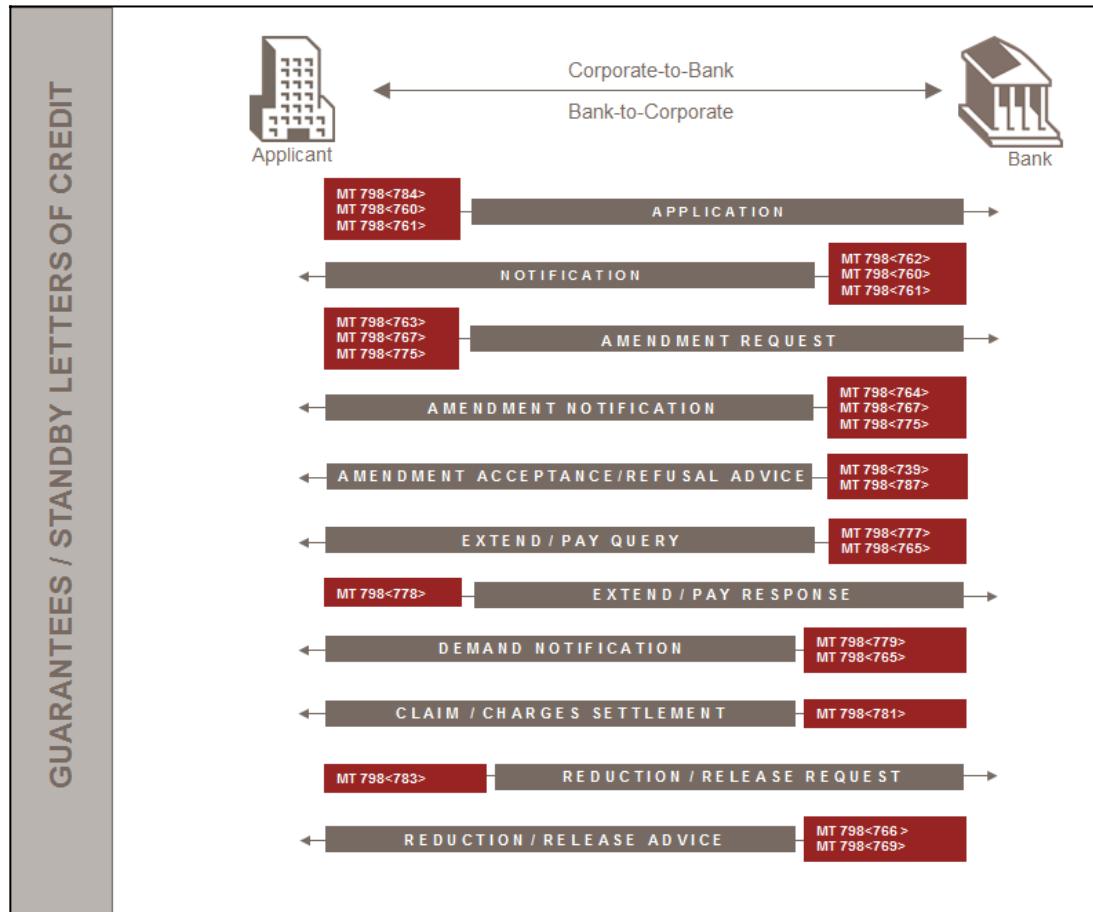
The following documentary credit flows are supported.

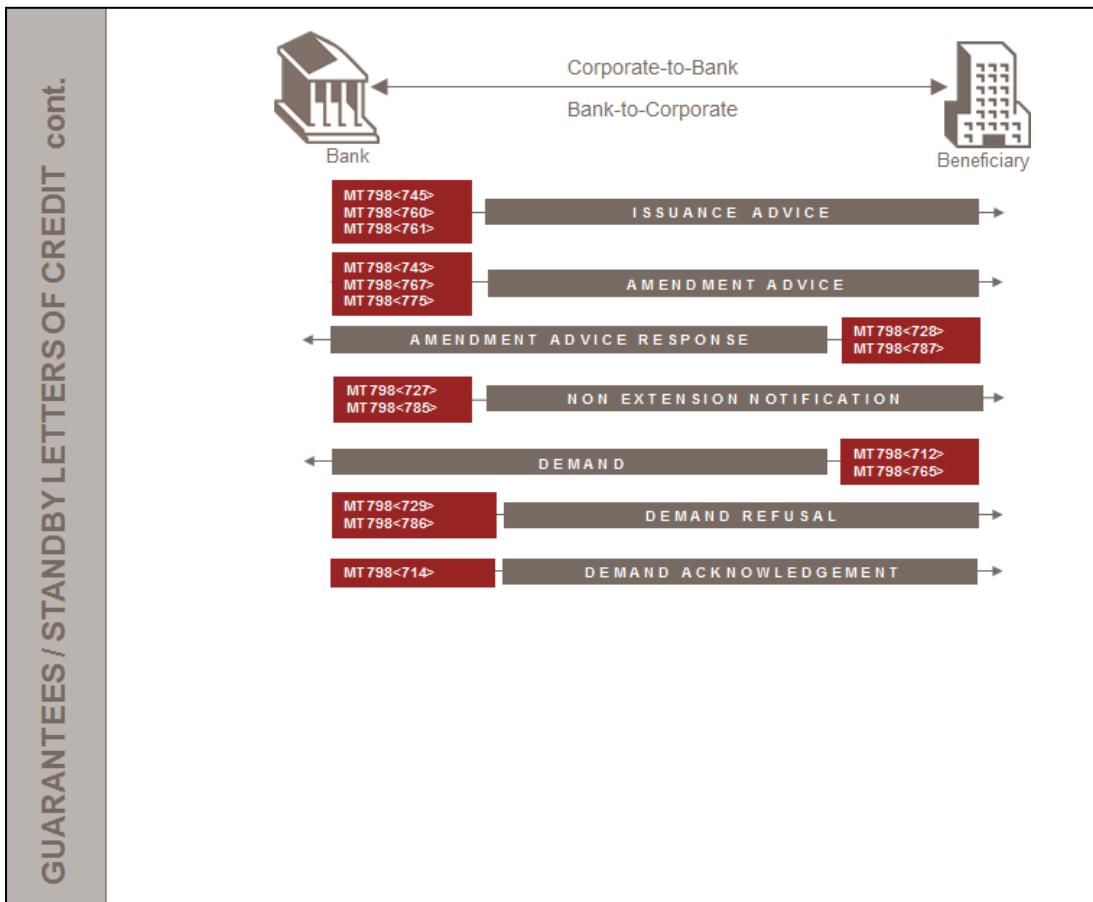




## Guarantee/Standy Letter of Credit Flows

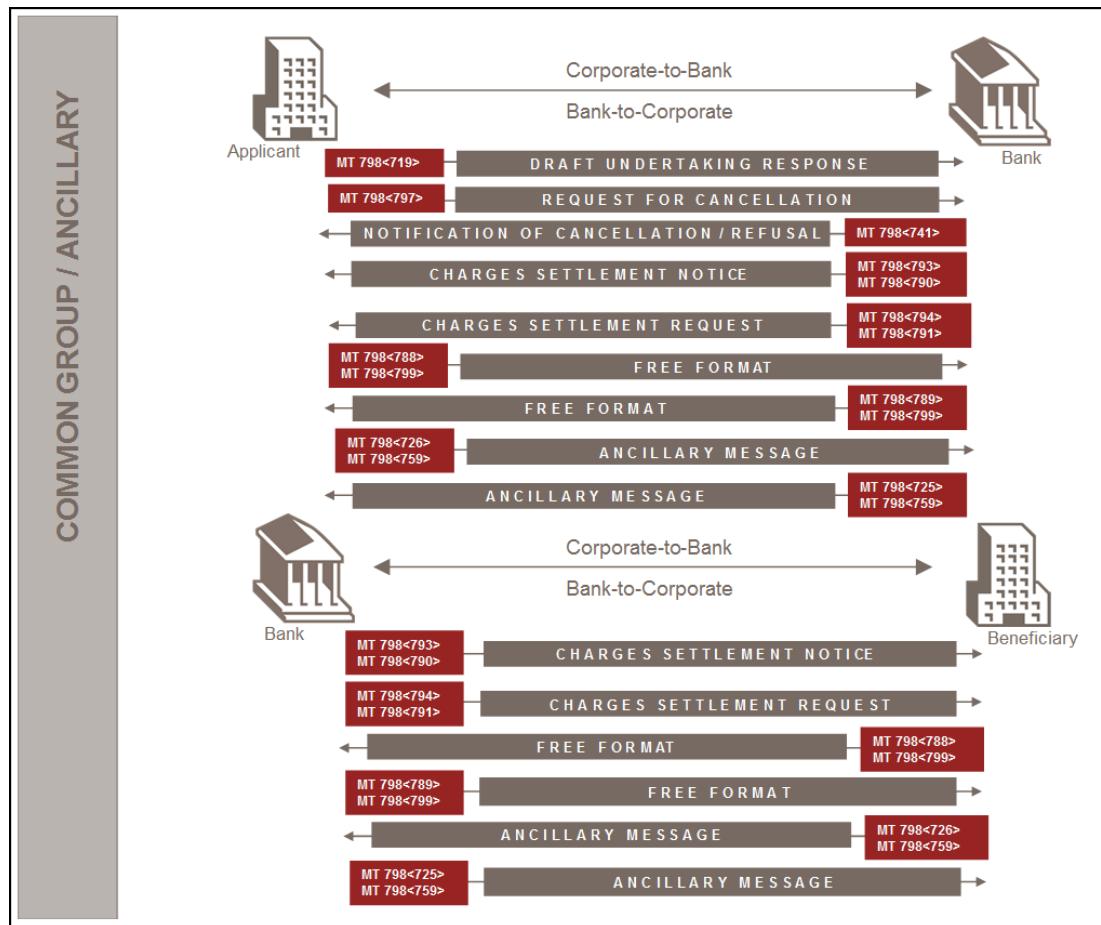
The following guarantee / standby letter of credit flows are supported





## Common Group Flows

The following common group flows are supported.

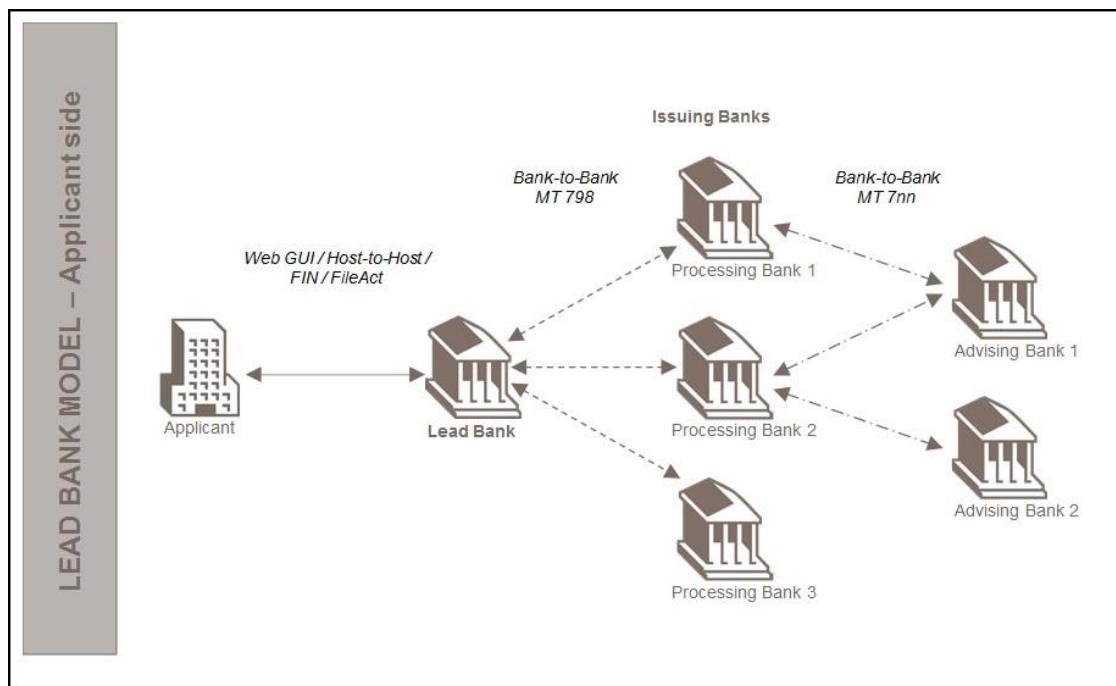


### Lead Bank Model

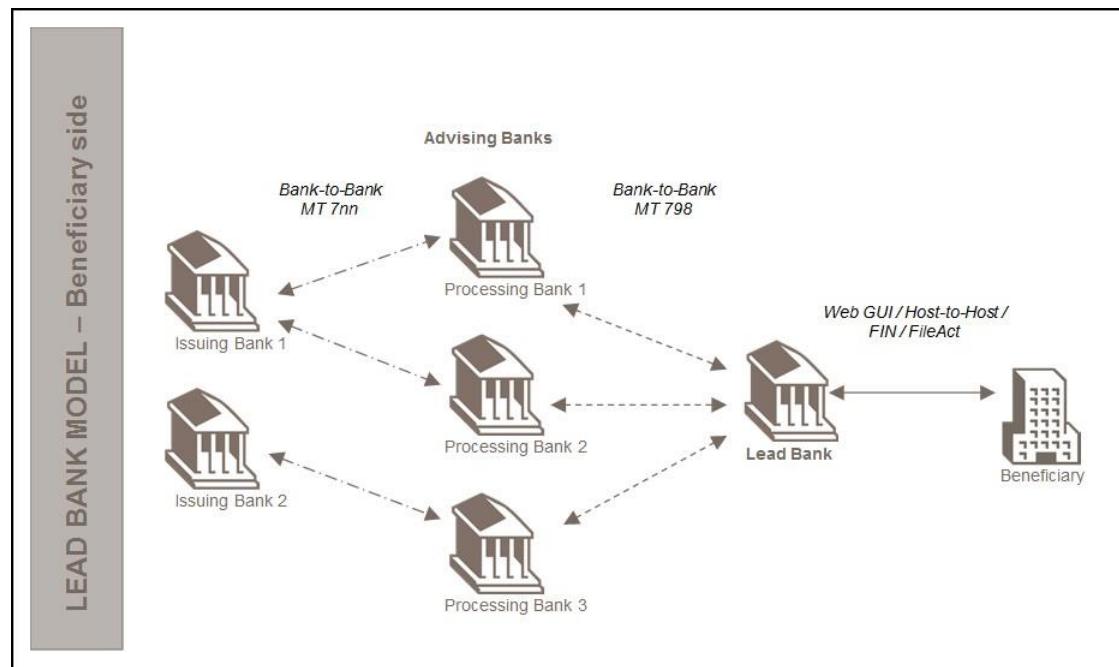
A number of major banks have requested an extension to the Trade for Corporates service to allow banks to offer their own Trade Finance solutions (Web Portal, Host-to-Host, etc) to their corporate customers and allow their corporate customer to use the bank's own Trade Finance solutions to communicate with any other bank, not just the bank providing the service (multi-banking option). Provision for this service feature has been incorporated in this guide and has been implemented as the Lead Bank Model.

Typically, large users of Documentary Credits, Standby LC's and Bank Guarantees use several banks. In connection with this service, each corporate customer will designate a Lead Bank, identifying the bank whose Trade Finance solution they will use to communicate not only with that bank, but also any other bank they choose to do Trade Finance messaging with. The other banks are known as Processing Banks.

The workflow for the Applicant side of Trade Finance messaging is as follows:



The reverse order takes place for Beneficiaries.



The Lead Bank's role is to provide their multi-bank Trade Finance solution to their corporate customer with the capability to route the Lead Bank Model (LBM) message to either (1) the Lead Bank's back-office system or (2) a Processing Bank's back-office system via SWIFT. The Lead Bank's Trade Finance solution must also be able to receive LBM messages from its own back-office system as well as from the Processing Bank's back-office system via SWIFT. The SWIFT flows between the Lead Bank and Processing Bank are not governed by SCORE. These are conducted using the BIC codes of the banks involved.

The Processing Bank's role is to be able to receive/send LBM messages from/to the Lead Bank on behalf of their mutual customer. The Processing Bank has responsibility for the actual processing of the trade transaction. Three additional fields have been added to each MT 798

Index Message; 29S (Customer Identifier), 29P (Processing Bank Identifier), 29U (Lead Bank Identifier). These fields identify (1) that the message is an LBM message and (2) the roles for each institution.

Fields 29S (Customer Identifier), 29P (Processing Bank Identifier), 29U (Lead Bank Identifier) may also be useful and used in other scenarios than LBM.

- For example, 29S could be used when one entity sends the message (to the bank) on behalf of several corporate entities (Subsidiaries A, B, C for example)
- In this case it is recommended that the entity is identified by the corporate ID assigned by the bank; this can be achieved by inputting OTHR and the ID in 29S.

## Technical Approach

A set of messages based on use of the existing MT 798 (Proprietary message) has been defined to support the transfer of existing Category 7 messages in a corporate-to-bank and a bank-to-corporate environment. In order to meet the specific requirements for additional components specific to this environment new MT 798 messages have also been defined, based on existing MT field types.

This approach has; 1) minimised the need for usage guidelines and rules to govern how additional information that otherwise would have needed to be inserted into the existing Category 7 messages structures; 2) provided new message sub-types to specifically identify the individual corporate-to-bank and bank-to-corporate flows.

### Index Message

The example diagrams that follow illustrate the use of the MT 798 in the corporate-to-bank and bank-to-corporate environment. The first MT 798 is always the Index message. This Index message indicates the function of a set of messages using the MT 798 sub-message type code, e.g., 770 – Application for documentary credit, 771 - Notification of draft or issuance of Documentary Credit, 774 - Advice of Documentary Credit, 784 - Application for issuance of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit / Undertaking, etc. The Index message contains additional fields specific to corporate-to-bank and bank-to-corporate flows.

### Details Message

The MT 798 Index message may be followed with further MT 798s, the first being the MT 798 Details message that envelopes an MT message, e.g., MT 700, MT 707, MT 760, etc. Depending on circumstances, the details message may include an existing interbank MT that has been received or sent by the sender of the MT 798. It could also be that no such interbank MT has been received or sent, and that the sender creates a details message, using the interbank MT specification as a format.

### Extension Message

The optional MT 798 Extension may follow and may occur several times, enveloping where appropriate additional MT message types, e.g., MT 701 or MT 711 or MT 721.

Refer to the Message Tables that follow the example diagrams for a detailed breakdown of the permitted structures.

### Linking Messages

A set of messages from a single sender are linked using field 27A (Message Index/Total) and field 21A (Customer Reference Number) or 21P (Bank Reference Number), depending on the message set function), and are supplemented where appropriate with the document reference number, e.g., documentary credit number or undertaking number.

It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A or 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups. One possible scheme for this is to enter the date in YYYYMMDD format followed by a sequence number; the first group sent on a particular day would have DATE-1, the second group DATE-2, etc. Other schemes are possible.

For example, the guideline present in V4 for documentary credit and guarantee amendments is still valid (and repeated here), it is important that the 21A and 21P references are such that it clearly allows the recipient to differentiate one set of messages (e.g., MT 798<784> + MT

798<760> + MT 798<761>) from another set of related messages (e.g., MT 798<763> + MT 798<767> + MT 798<775>) for the same documentary credit or guarantee. A set of related messages may directly or closely follow a prior message set. Accordingly, it is recommended that for each message set, that 21A and 21P be structured to include a number as a suffix to the base reference. For example, the first amendment as "21A:I1212190004/**A001**", the second as "21A:I1212190004/**A002**", the third as "21A:I1212190004/**A003**", and so on.

### **Field tag 21A (Customer Reference Number) and 21P (Bank Reference Number)**

In the bank-to-corporate flows:

- 21P must be present and mandatory in all messages of the flow (as it binds the messages)
- 21A may be present, but then only in the index message, if this reference is provided, it is not useful to repeat it in details and extension messages

Some flows are such that the B2C message is the first one, no preceding C2B message (example Settlement), in this case 21A is optional or absent; some flows are a response to a request, in this case 21A is mandatory.

In the corporate-to-bank flows:

- 21A must be present and mandatory in all messages of the flow (as it binds the messages)
- 21P may be present, but then only in the index message, it is not useful to repeat it in details and extension messages.

Some flows are such that the C2B message is the first one, with no preceding B2C message, in this case 21P is optional or absent; some flows are a response to a request, in this case 21P is mandatory.

### **Business References for Bank (21S) and Corporate (21T)**

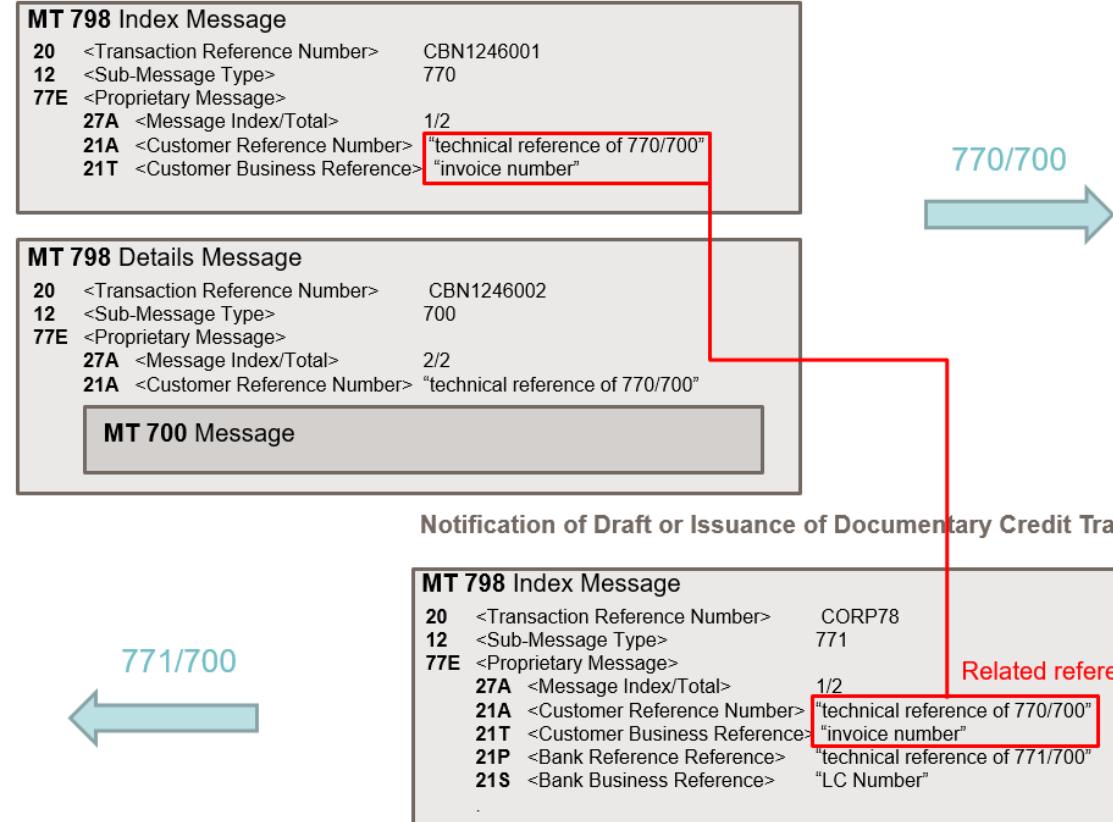
As fields 21A and 21P should be considered as technical references used for linking messages together, all flows should also contain business references, one for the corporate and one for the bank. These fields are mandatory for the sender and must contain either an undertaking/LC number or another meaningful reference (to the sender) if no undertaking/LC number is available. For example, in an application from the corporate, it could be an invoice number or project number. In general, it could also be an ERP reference, or a type of reference agreed between the two parties.

The bank receiving the message is required to send back the same references (related references 21A and 21T), in the same field, in the message that is the response to the corporate.

If the bank initiates a message exchange, it will fill in "Bank Business Reference". The corporate receiving the message is required to send back the same references (related references 21P and 21S), in the same fields, in the message that is the response to the bank.

#### **Example:**

## Application for Documentary Credit Transaction

**Field tag 20**

The MT 798 message has as its first field, tag 20 (Transaction Reference Number). Attention is drawn to the situation where the proprietary message within tag 77E may also include tag 20. For example, when tag 77E contains the MT 700 or MT 701 messages, tag 20 within field 77E is used to specify the Documentary Credit Number.

**Examples:**

## Application for Documentary Credit Transaction

### MT 798 Index Message

20 <Transaction Reference Number> CBN1246001  
12 <Sub-Message Type> 770  
77E <Proprietary Message>  
27A <Message Index/Total> 1/3  
21A <Customer Reference Number> 6655378  
21T <Customer Business Reference>INV456

.

.

### MT 798 Details Message

20 <Transaction Reference Number> CBN1246002  
12 <Sub-Message Type> 700  
77E <Proprietary Message>  
27A <Message Index/Total> 2/3  
21A <Customer Reference Number> 6655378

### MT 700 Message



### MT 798 Extension Message

20 <Transaction Reference Number> CBN1246003  
12 <Sub-Message Type> 701  
77E <Proprietary Message>  
27A <Message Index/Total> 3/3  
21A <Customer Reference Number> 6655378

### MT 701 Message

## Notification of Draft or Issuance of Documentary Credit Transaction

### MT 798 Index Message

20 <Transaction Reference Number> F123778802  
12 <Sub-Message Type> 771  
77E <Proprietary Message>  
27A <Message Index/Total> 1/3  
21A <Customer Reference Number> 6655378  
21T <Customer Business Reference> INV456  
21P <Bank Reference Reference> B3227ADP-23  
21S <Bank Business Reference> DC75689-00

### MT 798 Details Message

20 <Transaction Reference Number> F123778803  
12 <Sub-Message Type> 700  
77E <Proprietary Message>  
27A <Message Index/Total> 2/3  
21P <Bank Reference Number> 3227ADP-23

### MT 700 Message

20 <Documentary Credit Number> DC75689-00

### MT 798 Extension Message

20 <Transaction Reference Number> F123778804  
12 <Sub-Message Type> 701  
77E <Proprietary Message>  
27A <Message Index/Total> 3/3  
21P <Bank Reference Number> 3227ADP-23

### MT 701 Message

20 <Documentary Credit Number> DC75689-00

## Advice of Documentary Credit Transaction

### MT 798 Index Message

20	<Transaction Reference Number>	STM3779301
12	<Sub-Message Type>	774
77E	<Proprietary Message>	
27A	<Message Index/Total>	1/2
21P	<Bank Reference Number >	YQ4469
21S	<Bank Business Reference>	DC75689-00 (or advising bank ref)
20	<Documentary Credit Number>	DC75689-00

### MT 798 Details Message

20	<Transaction Reference Number>	STM3779302
12	<Sub-Message Type>	700
77E	<Proprietary Message>	
27A	<Message Index/Total>	2/2
21P	<Bank Reference Number >	YQ4469

### MT 700 Message

20	<Documentary Credit Number>	DC75689-00
----	-----------------------------	------------

## Notification of Draft or Issuance of Guarantee / Standby LC

### MT 798 Index Message

20	<Transaction Reference Number>	DSAG301
12	<Sub-Message Type>	762
77E	<Proprietary Message>	
27A	<Message Index/Total>	1/2
21A	<Customer Reference Number >	YQ4469
21T	<Customer Business Reference >	PRO1122
21P	<Bank Reference Number >	332469-89-01
21S	<Bank Business Reference >	GT4573009
20	<Undertaking Number>	GT4573009

### MT 798 Details Message

20	<Transaction Reference Number>	DSAG302
12	<Sub-Message Type>	760
77E	<Proprietary Message>	
27A	<Message Index/Total>	2/2
21P	<Bank Reference Number >	332469-89-01

### MT 760 Message

20	<Undertaking Number>	GT4573009
----	----------------------	-----------

## Message Tables

<b>Import Documentary Credit</b>					
<b>MT Message Type</b>	<b>Sub-MESSAGE Type</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Max. Occur</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Base Message Type</b>
<b>Application for Documentary Credit - C2B</b>					
MT 798	770	M	1	LC Application Index	
MT 798	700	M	1	LC Application Details	MT 700
MT 798	701	O	7	LC Application Extension	MT 701
<b>Notification of draft or issuance of Documentary Credit - B2C</b>					
MT 798	771	M	1	LC Notification of Draft or Issuance Index	
MT 798	700	M	1	LC Notification of Draft or Issuance Details	MT 700
MT 798	701	O	7	LC Notification of Draft or Issuance Extension	MT 701
<b>Request for amendment of Documentary Credit - C2B</b>					
MT 798	772	M	1	LC Amendment Request Index	
MT 798	707	M	1	LC Amendment Request Details	MT 707
MT 798	708	O	7	LC Amendment Request Extension	MT 708
<b>Notification of amendment of Documentary Credit - B2C</b>					
MT 798	773	M	1	LC Notification of Amendment Index	
MT 798	707	M	1	LC Notification of Amendment Details	MT 707
MT 798	708	O	7	LC Notification of Amendment Extension	MT 708
<b>Notification of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment – B2C</b>					
MT 798	736	M	1	LC Amendment Acceptance Notice Index	
<b>Advice of Discrepancy – B2C</b>					
MT 798	748	M	1	LC Discrepancy Advice Index	
MT 798	750	O	1	LC Discrepancy Advice Details	MT 750
<b>Response to Advice of Discrepancy – C2B</b>					
MT 798	749	M	1	LC Discrepancy Response Index	
<b>Notification of Advice of Payment/Acceptance/Negotiation – B2C</b>					
MT 798	753	M	1	LC Compliance Advice Index	
<b>Notification of Advice of Discharge – B2C</b>					
MT 798	731	M	1	LC Discharge Advice Index	
MT 798	732	M	1	LC Discharge Advice Details	MT 732
<b>Notification of Advice of Refusal – B2C</b>					
MT 798	733	M	1	LC Refusal Advice Index	
MT 798	734	M	1	LC Refusal Advice Details	MT 734
<b>Notification of Advice of Reimbursement or Payment – B2C</b>					
MT 798	755	M	1	LC Payment Advice Index	
<b>Settlement of Import Documentary Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	757	M	1	LC Import Settlement Index	

<b>Export Documentary Credit</b>					
<b>MT Message Type</b>	<b>Sub-MESSAGE Type</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Max. Occur</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Base Message Type</b>
<b>Advice of Documentary Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	774	M	1	LC Advice Index	
MT 798	700	M	1	LC Advice Details	MT 700
MT 798	701	O	7	LC Advice Extension	MT 701
<b>Advice of amendment or confirmation of Documentary Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	776	M	1	LC Amendment Advice Index	
MT 798	707	O	1	LC Amendment Advice Details	MT 707
MT 798	708	O	7	LC Amendment Advice Extension	MT 708
<b>Advice of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment – C2B</b>					
MT 798	735	M	1	LC Amendment Acceptance Advice Index	
<b>Advice of Third Bank Documentary Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	780	M	1	LC Third Bank Advice Index	
MT 798	710	M	1	LC Third Bank Advice Details	MT 710
MT 798	711	O	7	LC Third Bank Advice Extension	MT 711
<b>Response to Documentary Credit presentation – B2C</b>					
MT 798	737	M	1	LC Presentation Response Index	
<b>Response to Advice of Discrepant Presentation – C2B</b>					
MT 798	738	M	1	LC Discrepant Presentation Response Index	
<b>Notification of authorisation to Pay, Accept or Negotiate – B2C</b>					
MT 798	751	M	1	LC Authorisation Index	
<b>Notification of Advice of Payment/Acceptance/Negotiation – B2C</b>					
MT 798	753	M	1	LC Compliance Advice Index	
<b>Notification of Advice of Discharge – B2C</b>					
MT 798	731	M	1	LC Discharge Advice Index	
MT 798	732	M	1	LC Discharge Advice Details	MT 732
<b>Notification of Advice of Refusal – B2C</b>					
MT 798	733	M	1	LC Refusal Advice Index	
MT 798	734	M	1	LC Refusal Advice Details	MT 734
<b>Notification of Advice of Reimbursement or Payment – B2C</b>					
MT 798	755	M	1	LC Payment Advice Index	
<b>Request for Transfer of a Documentary Credit – C2B</b>					
MT 798	722	M	1	LC Transfer Request Index	
<b>Advice of Transfer of a Documentary Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	782	M	1	LC Transfer Advice Index	
MT 798	720	M	1	LC Transfer Advice Details	MT 720

MT 798	721	O	7	LC Transfer Advice Extension	MT 721
<b>Notification of Transfer of a Documentary Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	723	M	1	LC Transfer Notification Index	
MT 798	720	O	1	LC Transfer Advice Details	MT 720
MT 798	721	O	7	LC Transfer Advice Extension	MT 721
<b>Settlement of Export Documentary Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	758	M	1	LC Export Settlement Index	

<b>Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit</b>					
<b>MT Message Type</b>	<b>Sub-Message Type</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Max. Occur</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Base Message Type</b>
<b>Application for issuance of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – C2B</b>					
MT 798	784	M	1	Guarantee / Standby / Undertaking Application Index	
MT 798	760	M	1	Guarantee / Standby / Undertaking Application Details	MT 760
MT 798	761	O	7	Guarantee / Standby / Undertaking Application Extension	MT 761
<b>Notification of Draft or Issuance of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	762	M	1	Guarantee / Standby / Undertaking Notification Index	
MT 798	760	M	1	Guarantee / Standby / Undertaking Notification Details	MT 760
MT 798	761	O	7	Guarantee / Standby / Undertaking Notification Extension	MT 761
<b>Request for amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – C2B</b>					
MT 798	763	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Request Index	
MT 798	767	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Request Details	MT 767
MT 798	775	O	7	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Request Extension	MT 775
<b>Notification of amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	764	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Notification Index	
MT 798	767	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Notification Details	MT 767
MT 798	775	O	7	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Request Extension	MT 775
<b>Advice of acceptance/refusal of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Amendment – B2C</b>					
MT 798	739	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Acceptance/Refusal Advice Index	
MT 798	787	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Acceptance/Refusal Advice Details	MT 787
<b>Advice of issued Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	745	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Advice Index	
MT 798	760	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Advice Details	MT 760

MT 798	761	O	7	Guarantee / Standby Notification Extension	MT 761
<b>Advice of amended Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	743	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Advice Index	
MT 798	767	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Advice Details	MT 767
MT 798	775	O	7	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Request Extension	MT 775
<b>Response to Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Amendment – C2B</b>					
MT 798	728	M	1	Response to Guarantee / Standby Amendment Index	
MT 798	787	M	1	Response to Guarantee / Standby Amendment Details	MT 787
<b>Query to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	777	M	1	Query to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Index	
MT 798	765	O	1	Query to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Details	MT 765
<b>Response to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – C2B</b>					
MT 798	778	M	1	Response to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Index	
<b>Notification of Non-Extension of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	727	M	1	Notification of Non-extension of Guarantee / Standby Index	
MT 798	785	M	1	Notification of Non-extension of Guarantee / Standby Details	MT 785
<b>Demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – C2B</b>					
MT 798	712	M	1	Demand for payment of Credit Index	
MT 798	765	M	1	Demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Details	MT 765
<b>Demand Refusal under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	729	M	1	Demand Refusal under Guarantee / Standby Index	
MT 798	786	M	1	Demand Refusal under Guarantee / Standby Details	MT 786
<b>Acknowledgment of demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	714	M	1	Acknowledgment of demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Index	
<b>Notification of demand for payment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	779	M	1	Notification of demand for payment of Guarantee / Standby Index	
MT 798	765	O	1	Notification of demand for payment of Guarantee / Standby Details	MT 765
<b>Settlement of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit claim for payment and/or charges – B2C</b>					
MT 798	781	M	1	Settlement of Guarantee / Standby claim for payment and/or charges Index	
<b>Request for Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Reduction / Release – C2B</b>					
MT 798	783	M	1	Request for Guarantee / Standby Reduction / Release Index	

<b>Advice of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Reduction or Release – B2C</b>					
MT 798	766	M	1	Advice of Guarantee / Standby Release / Reduction Index	
MT 798	769	M	1	Advice of Guarantee / Standby Release / Reduction Details	MT 769

<b>Common Group</b>					
<b>MT Message Type</b>	<b>Sub-Message Type</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Max. Occur</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Base Message Type</b>
<b>Response to a Draft Undertaking – C2B</b>					
MT 798	719	M	1	Response to a Draft Undertaking Index	
<b>Request for Cancellation – C2B</b>					
MT 798	797	M	1	Request for Cancellation Index	
<b>Notification of Cancellation / Refusal– B2C</b>					
MT 798	741	M	1	Notification of Cancellation / Refusal Index	
<b>Notification of Settlement of Charges – B2C</b>					
MT 798	793	M	1	Charges Settlement Notice Index	
MT 798	790	M	1	Charges Settlement Notice Details	MT 790
<b>Request for Settlement of Charges – B2C</b>					
MT 798	794	M	1	Charges Settlement Request Index	
MT 798	791	M	1	Charges Settlement Request Details	MT 791
<b>Free Format Message – C2B</b>					
MT 798	788	M	1	Free Format Message Index	
MT 798	799	M	8	Free Format Message Details	MT 799
<b>Free Format Message – B2C</b>					
MT 798	789	M	1	Free Format Message Index	
MT 798	799	M	8	Free Format Message Details	MT 799
<b>Ancillary Message – C2B</b>					
MT 798	726	M	1	Ancillary Message Index	
MT 798	759	M	8	Ancillary Message Details	MT 759
<b>Ancillary Message – B2C</b>					
MT 798	725	M	1	Ancillary Message Index	
MT 798	759	M	8	Ancillary Message Details	MT 759

## 2.1 Import Documentary Credit Transactions

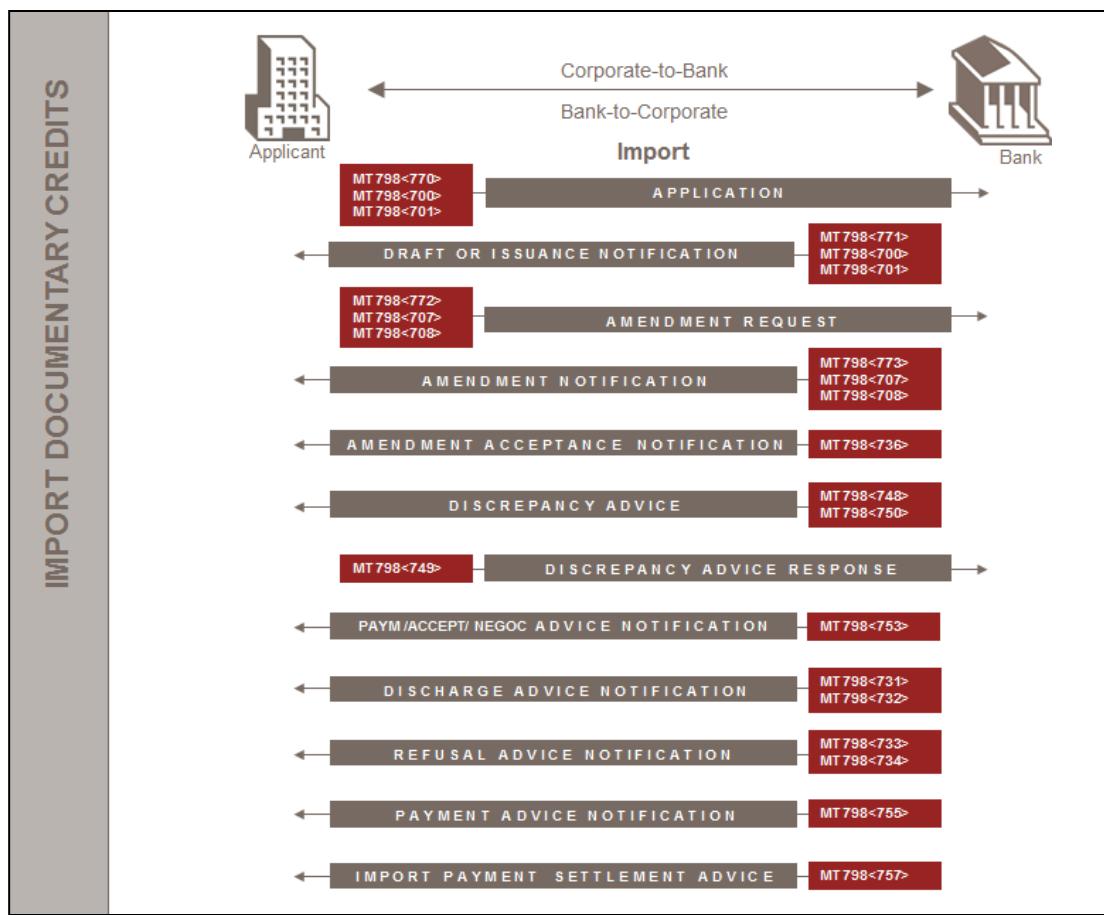
This section covers the documentary credit transactions applicable to corporate entities involved on the import side of the trade process, specifically twelve transaction flows:

- Application for Documentary Credit – Corporate-to-Bank
- Notification of draft or issuance of Documentary Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Request for amendment of Documentary Credit – Corporate-to-Bank
- Notification of amendment of Documentary Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Notification of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment – Bank-to-Corporate
- Advice of Discrepancy – Bank-to-Corporate
- Response to Advice of Discrepancy – Corporate-to-Bank
- Notification of Advice of Payment/Acceptance/Negotiation – Bank-to-Corporate
- Notification of Advice of Discharge – Bank-to-Corporate
- Notification of Advice of Refusal – Bank-to-Corporate
- Notification of Advice of Reimbursement or Payment – Bank-to-Corporate
- Settlement of Import Documentary Credit – Bank-to-Corporate

The *SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit* serves as the main document describing the standards. For more information, see this handbook. In addition, the following implementation conventions apply:

- There are no network validated rules for the MT 798, nor for the enveloped message within the MT 798. In implementation, the network validated rules as specified in the latest SWIFT User Handbook for the enveloped message (for example, MT 700 - Issue of a Documentary Credit) should be adhered to, unless otherwise stated in this section of the guide,
- Both the usage rules and usage guidelines as specified in the latest SWIFT User Handbook for all enveloped messages should be adhered to, unless otherwise stated in this section of the guide.

The following diagram depicts the import transaction flows:



The following table indicates the composition of the individual transaction flows:

<b>Import Documentary Credit</b>					
<b>MT Message Type</b>	<b>Sub-Message Type</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Max. Occur</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Base Message Type</b>
<b>Application for Documentary Credit - C2B</b>					
MT 798	770	M	1	LC Application Index	
MT 798	700	M	1	LC Application Details	MT 700
MT 798	701	O	7	LC Application Extension	MT 701
<b>Notification of draft or issuance of Documentary Credit - B2C</b>					
MT 798	771	M	1	LC Notification of Draft or Issuance Index	
MT 798	700	M	1	LC Notification of Draft or Issuance Details	MT 700
MT 798	701	O	7	LC Notification of Draft or Issuance Extension	MT 701
<b>Request for amendment of Documentary Credit - C2B</b>					
MT 798	772	M	1	LC Amendment Request Index	
MT 798	707	M	1	LC Amendment Request Details	MT 707
MT 798	708	O	7	LC Notification of Amendment Details	MT 708
<b>Notification of amendment of Documentary Credit - B2C</b>					
MT 798	773	M	1	LC Notification of Amendment Index	
MT 798	707	M	1	LC Notification of Amendment Details	MT 707
MT 798	708	O	7	LC Notification of Amendment Details	MT 708
<b>Notification of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment – B2C</b>					
MT 798	736	M	1	LC Amendment Acceptance Notice Index	
<b>Advice of Discrepancy – B2C</b>					
MT 798	748	M	1	LC Discrepancy Advice Index	
MT 798	750	O	1	LC Discrepancy Advice Details	MT 750
<b>Response to Advice of Discrepancy – C2B</b>					
MT 798	749	M	1	LC Discrepancy Response Index	
<b>Notification of Advice of Payment/Acceptance/Negotiation – B2C</b>					
MT 798	753	M	1	LC Compliance Advice Index	
<b>Notification of Advice of Discharge – B2C</b>					
MT 798	731	M	1	LC Discharge Advice Index	
MT 798	732	M	1	LC Discharge Advice Details	MT 732
<b>Notification of Advice of Refusal – B2C</b>					
MT 798	733	M	1	LC Refusal Advice Index	
MT 798	734	M	1	LC Refusal Advice Details	MT 734
<b>Notification of Advice of Reimbursement or Payment – B2C</b>					
MT 798	755	M	1	LC Payment Advice Index	
<b>Settlement of Import Documentary Credit – B2C</b>					

MT 798	757	M	1	LC Import Settlement Index	
--------	-----	---	---	----------------------------	--

The following legend applies for the above table and the subsequent format and field specifications. The full rules for the notation of components inside messages and fields can be found in the SWIFT User Handbook.

<b>Legend</b>		
<b>Status</b>	M	Mandatory
	O	Optional
<b>Usage Details</b>	DEFN	Definition
	RULE	Usage Rule. Must be adhered to
	GUID	Usage Guidance. Recommended practice
	CODE	Applicable Code Values
	NOTE	Remark
<b>Format</b>	a	alphabetic, capital letters (A through Z), upper case only
	c	alpha-numeric capital letters (upper case), and digits only
	n	numeric, digits (0 through 9) only
	x	SWIFT X set: • A to Z • a to z • 0 to 9 / - ? : ( ) . , ' + SPACE CrLf
	z	SWIFT Z set: • A to Z • a to z • 0 to 9 / - ? : ( ) . , ' + SPACE CrLf = ! " % & * < > ; @ # _ {
	!	fixed length
	d	decimals, including decimal comma ',' preceding the fractional part. The fractional part may be missing, but the decimal comma must always be present
Codes	I	or

## 2.1.1 Application for Documentary Credit

### Scope

The Application for Documentary Credit is sent by the corporate (applicant) to its bank and comprises a series of MT 798 messages. Collectively these messages are used to submit one or more draft documentary credit applications for bank review or as a final draft to initiate the issuance of a documentary credit by the applicant's bank according to the terms, and conditions under which the requested credit is to be issued.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one application must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 770 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 700 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 700 and enveloping one MT 700 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 700 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.
- In addition, up to a maximum of seven MT 798 messages may optionally be included, each identified with a sub-message type of 701 and enveloping one MT 701 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 701 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document.

An issuing bank, at its discretion, may modify or correct the final application data prior to approval by the applicant.

Each MT 798 message for a single application must be identified with the same Customer Reference Number, specified as field 21A, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters. In instances where a MT 700 or MT 701 would otherwise exceed 9,800 characters, fields 45A (Description of Goods and/or Services), 46A (Documents Required), or 47A (Additional Conditions) should be distributed across further MT 701s such that any single instance of a MT 700 or MT 701 does not then exceed the limit of 9,800 characters, Refer to section 2.2.1 (Advice of Documentary Credit) for examples.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

The Application for Documentary Credit does not constitute an operative credit instrument.

## MT 798<770> - LC Application Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;770&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;770&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 770.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;770&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<770> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/3, or 1/4 or 1/5 depending on the number of 701s.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the Application number which has been assigned by the Applicant. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference.
2.5	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.6	25F	Text Purpose	5!c	M	DEFN: This field specifies whether the application text is draft or final  CODES:  DRAFT = Proposed application text to facilitate review by the applicant and the applicant's bank. The applicant's bank must not issue an undertaking based on text designated as DRAFT.  FINAL = Final submission requesting/authorizing issuance of a documentary credit  GUID: The use of DRAFT does not imply any obligation on the receiving institution to subsequently issue the undertaking.
2.7	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.

2.8	24D	Method of Issue	4!c/[35x] (Method)(Additional Information)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the method by which a documentary credit is to be issued.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>TELE = Telecommunication/SWIFT</li> <li>PSTP = Post with pre-advice/SWIFT</li> <li>PSTW = Post without pre-advice/SWIFT</li> <li>COUP = Courier (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) with pre-advice</li> <li>COUW = Courier (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) without pre-advice</li> </ul> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;770&gt; additional information may only be used when the method is COUP or COUW, to optionally specify the name of the courier.</p>
2.9	53C	Debit Account Number	/34x (Account)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the number of the account of the Applicant to be used for settlement.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;770&gt; for accounts serviced in countries that have implemented IBAN, the IBAN should be used to identify the account.</p>
2.10	71A	Bank Charges Payable By	3!a (Code)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the party(s) responsible for the documentary credit charges.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BEN = Beneficiary pays all charges</li> <li>OUR = Applicant pays all charges</li> <li>SHA = All charges within Issuing Bank are for account of the applicant and all charges outside Issuing Bank are for account of the beneficiary</li> <li>OTH = Other arrangement</li> </ul> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;770&gt;, field 73A 'Charges Information' must be used to specify the additional charges information when code is = OTH.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;770&gt;, if field 71M (Confirmation Charges Payable By) is used, the confirmation charges are not covered by this field, field 71A.</p>
2.11	73A	Charges Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the documentary credit charges.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;770&gt;, must only be used if field 71A 'Bank Charges Payable By' is = OTH.</p>

2.12	25A	Charges Debit Account Number	/34x (Account)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the number of account of the Applicant to be used for settlement of charges.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;770&gt;, only used when the charges are to be handled via separate account from the prime debit account specified in field 53C.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;770&gt; for accounts serviced in countries that have implemented IBAN, the IBAN should be used to identify the account.</p>
2.13	71M	Confirmation Charges Payable By	4!c	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the party responsible for payment of the confirmation charges.</p> <p>CODES</p> <p>Confirmation Charges Payable By must contain one of the following codes:</p> <p>APPL Applicant.</p> <p>BENE Beneficiary</p>
2.14	58a	Advising Bank	<p><b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)</p> <p><b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name &amp; Address)</p>	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the bank through which the documentary credit is to be advised/confirmed to the beneficiary.</p> <p>RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the advising bank.</p> <p>GUID: this field should not be used by the Applicant except if there is specific requirement to have the credit advised by this party.</p>
2.15	29T	Transport Mode	4!c/[35x] (Code)(Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the mode of transport for the shipment(s) covered by the documentary credit.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <p>AIRT = Air</p> <p>SEAT = Sea</p> <p>RAIL = Rail</p> <p>ROAD = Road</p> <p>MULT = Multimodal</p> <p>OTHR = any other mode of transport such as shipments by both air and sea, which must be specified innarrative (2nd subfield)</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;770&gt; narrative may only be used in combination with 'OTHR' to specify in free text form the transport mode.</p>

2.16	21E	Forward Contract Reference Number	35x (Text)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a reference number of a forward contract used to hedge currency risk.
2.17	45C	Applicant Undertaking	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the undertaking clause of the applicant, how the transaction is cash covered, secured if it is not by debiting the agreed account.
2.18	29A	Customer Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the corporate.
2.19	72Z	Corporate to Bank Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the issuing bank.
2.20	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.21	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.22	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

2.23	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
------	-----	----------------------	-------------------------------------	---	--

## MT 798<700> - LC Application Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;700&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;700&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 700.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;700&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 700]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<770> the message index number must have a fixed value of 2, e.g., 2/3, or 2/4, or 2/5. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 700 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the Application number which has been assigned by the Applicant. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 700 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 700 Message</b>		M	MT 700 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) <i>Fields listed here below for convenience.</i> <i>Always refer to latest User Handbook.</i>
2.4	27	Sequence of Total	1!n/1!n (Number)(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the number of this message in the series of messages sent for a documentary credit, and the total number of messages in the series.
2.5	40A	Form of Documentary Credit	24x (Type)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the type of credit. CODES: IRREVOCABLE   IRREVOCABLE TRANSFERABLE
2.6	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number which has been assigned by the Sender. RULE: For MT 798<700> this field must specify a documentary credit number, pre-assigned by the applicant's bank, or a fixed value of NONREF.

2.7	23	Reference to Pre-Advice	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies if the documentary credit has been pre-advised. RULE: For MT 798<700> this field is not used.
2.8	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank (Sender) considers the documentary credit as being issued. RULE: For MT 798<700> the value of this field is discarded by the receiver as part of an application.
2.9	40E	Applicable Rules	30x/[35x] (Applicable Rules)(Narrative)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the rules the credit is subject to. CODES: EUCP LATEST VERSION   EUCPURR LATEST VERSION   ISP LATEST VERSION   OTHR   UCP LATEST VERSION   UCPURR LATEST VERSION Note: Narrative may only be used when code is OTHR
2.10	31D	Date and Place of Expiry	6!n29x (Date)(Place)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the latest date for presentation under the documentary credit and the place where documents may be presented. RULE: For MT 798<700> the date must be on or later than the date in Field 44C (Latest Date of Shipment) if field 44C is present. GUID: For MT 798<700> if the place is not known, the codeword NOTKNOWN should be used
2.11	51a	Applicant Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the bank of the applicant customer, if different from the issuing bank. GUID: For MT 798<700> this field is not required.
2.12	50	Applicant	4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party on behalf of which the documentary credit is being issued.
2.13	59	Beneficiary	[/34x] (Account) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party in favour of which the documentary credit is being issued. GUID: For MT 798<700>, if the Beneficiary account number is specified, Field: 58a (Advising Bank) should also be specified in the MT 798<700>.
2.14	32B	Currency Code, Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the documentary credit.

2.15	39A	Percentage Credit Amount Tolerance	2n/2n (Tolerance 1)(Tolerance 2)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the tolerance relative to the documentary credit amount as a percentage plus and/or minus that amount.
2.16	39C	Additional Amounts Covered	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies any additional amounts available to the beneficiary under the terms of the credit, such as insurance, freight, interest, etc. GUID: Additional amounts covered, for example, freight costs, interest, insurance.
2.17	41a	Available With ... By ...	<b>A</b> 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) 14x (Code) <b>D</b> 4*35x (Name & Address) 14x (Code)	M	DEFN: This field identifies the bank with which the credit is available (the place for presentation) and an indication of how the credit is available. CODES: BY ACCEPTANCE   BY DEF PAYMENT   BY MIXED PYMT   BY NEGOTIATION   BY PAYMENT GUID: When specified, the bank name may be a specific named bank or may be generically specified using one of the following recommended code words ADVISING BANK   ISSUING BANK   REIMBURSING BANK   ANY BANK   ANY BANK IN. For ANY BANK IN, the address may be used to specify the country, city, etc. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank with which the credit is requested to be made available.
2.18	42C	Drafts at ...	3*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the tenor of drafts to be drawn under the documentary credit. GUID: The draft tenor may be a specified using one of the following recommended code words SIGHT   AFTER DRAFT DATE   AFTER SHIPMENT DATE. RULE: For MT 798<700>, this field is only used if field 41a 'Available By' is not = BY DEF PAYMENT. Mandatory if field 41a 'Available By' = BY ACCEPTANCE.

2.19	42a	Drawee	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the drawee of the drafts to be drawn under the documentary credit.  RULE: For MT 798<700> only used if field 41a 'Available By' is not = BY DEF PAYMENT or not = BY MIXED PYMT. Mandatory if field 42C is used.  RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the drawee bank.
2.20	42M	Mixed Payment Details	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the payment dates, amounts and/or method for their determination in a documentary credit which is available by mixed payment.  GUID: The instalment tenor may be specified using one of the following recommended code words SIGHT   AFTER DRAFT DATE   AFTER SHIPMENT DATE.  RULE: For MT 798<700>, this field is mandatory if field 41a 'Available By' = BY MIXED PYMT.
2.21	42P	Negotiation/Deferred Payment Details	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the payment date or method for its determination in a documentary credit which is available by deferred payment only.  RULE: For MT 798<700>, this field is mandatory if field 41a 'Available By' = BY DEF PAYMENT.
2.22	43P	Partial Shipments	11x	O	DEFN: This field specifies whether or not partial shipments are allowed under the documentary credit.  One of the following code words must be used ALLOWED   CONDITIONAL   NOT ALLOWED.  GUID: The absence of this field means that partial shipments are allowed.
2.23	43T	Transhipment	11x	O	DEFN: This field specifies whether or not transhipment is allowed under the documentary credit.  One of the following code words must be used ALLOWED   CONDITIONAL   NOT ALLOWED.  GUID: The effectiveness of the option "transhipment not allowed" should be checked under the ICC UCP article relevant to the specific transport document used in this credit.  GUID: The absence of this field means that transhipment is allowed.

2.24	44A	Place of Taking in Charge/Dispatch from .../Place of Receipt	1* <del>140z65x</del> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the place of taking in charge (in case of a multimodal transport document), the place of receipt (in case of a road, rail or inland waterway transport document or a courier or expedited delivery service document), the place of dispatch or the place of shipment to be indicated on the transport document.
2.25	44E	Port of Loading/Airport of Departure	1* <del>140z65x</del> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the port of loading or airport of departure to be indicated on the transport document.
2.26	44F	Port of Discharge/Airport of Destination	1* <del>140z65x</del> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the port of discharge or airport of destination to be indicated on the transport document.
2.27	44B	Place of Final Destination/For Transportation to .../Place of Delivery	1* <del>140z65x</del> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the final destination or place of delivery to be indicated on the transport document.
2.28	44C	Latest Date of Shipment	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the latest date for loading on board/dispatch/taking in charge.
2.29	44D	Shipment Period	6*65x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the period of time during which the goods are to be loaded on board/despatched/taken in charge. RULE: For MT 798<700>, if field 44C is used, field 44D must not be used.
2.30	45A	Description of Goods and/or Services	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: this field contains a description of the goods and/or services. Usage rules: The specification of each new item should begin on a new line, preceded by the sign '+' or numbered using +1), +2), etc. GUID: Purchase Order details may be repeated, product details (line item) may be repeated per Purchase Order. GUID: Last line of the description should specify the applicable INCOTERM, e.g., CIF HAMBURG.

2.31	46A	Documents Required	100*65z (Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field contains a description of any documents required.</p> <p>Usage rules: When the ultimate date of issue of a transport document is specified, it is to be specified with the relative document in this field.</p> <p>For credits subject to eUCP, the format in which electronic records are to be presented must be specified in this field.</p> <p>The specification of each new item should begin on a new line, preceded by the sign '+' or numbered using +1), +2), etc.</p> <p>GUID: The document descriptions should be structured as follows: 1) Invoicing documents, 2) Transport Documents, 3) Insurance Documents, 4) Other documents.</p>
2.32	47A	Additional Conditions	100*65z (Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field contains a description of further conditions of the documentary credit</p> <p>Usage rules: Where applicable, for credits subject to eUCP:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If presentation of both electronic records and paper documents is allowed, the place for presentation of the electronic records (that is, the electronic address to which presentation must be made) as well as the place for presentation of the paper documents must be specified in this field.</li> <li>• If presentation of only electronic records is allowed, the place for presentation of the electronic records (that is, the electronic address to which presentation must be made) must be specified in this field.</li> <li>• If not already part of the original documentary credit, the advising bank, that is, the receiver of the message, must provide the beneficiary or another advising bank with the electronic address of the issuing bank. Furthermore, the advising bank must provide the beneficiary or another advising bank with the electronic address where they wish the electronic records to be presented.</li> </ul> <p>The specification of each new item should begin on a new line, preceded by the sign '+' or numbered using +1), +2), etc.</p>

2.33	49G	Special Payment Conditions for Beneficiary	100*65z	O	DEFN: This field specifies special payment conditions applicable to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions.
2.34	49H	Special Payment Conditions for Bank Only	100*65z	O	DEFN: This field specifies special payment conditions applicable to a bank without disclosure to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions. Content of the field must specify to which bank it is addressed.  GUID: For MT 798<700> this field is not used.
2.35	71D	Charges	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field may be used only to specify charges to be borne by the beneficiary.  RULE: For MT 798<700> this field is not used.
2.36	48	Period for Presentation in Days	3n/[35x]	O	DEFN: This field specifies the number of calendar days after the date of shipment within which the documents must be presented for payment, acceptance, or negotiation. Narrative must only be used to specify another type of date than a shipment date, for example invoice date, from which the period for presentation begins.  Usage rules: The absence of this field means that the presentation period is 21 days after the date of shipment, where applicable.
2.37	49	Confirmation Instructions	7!x (Instruction)	M	DEFN: This field contains confirmation instructions for the requested confirmation party.  CODES: CONFIRM   MAY ADD   WITHOUT.
2.38	58a	Requested Confirmation Party	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/34x (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: Bank which is requested to add its confirmation or may add its confirmation.  GUID: this field should not be used by the Applicant except if there is specific requirement to have the credit confirmed by this party
2.39	53a	Reimbursing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the bank which has been authorised by the Sender to reimburse drawings under the documentary credit. This may be a branch of the Sender or the Receiver, or an entirely different bank.  RULE: For MT 798<700> this field is not used.

2.40	78	Instructions to the Paying/Accepting/Negotiating Bank	12*65x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies instructions to the paying, accepting, or negotiating bank. It may also indicate if pre-notification of a reimbursement claim or pre-debit notification to the issuing bank is required.  RULE: For MT 798<700> this field is not used.
2.41	57a	'Advise Through' Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>B</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) [/35x] (Location) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the bank, if different from the Receiver, through which the documentary credit is to be advised/confirmed to the beneficiary.  RULE: For MT 798<700> this field is not used.
2.42	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the Receiver.  RULE: For MT 798<700> this field is not used.

### MT 700 Network Validated Rules

**C1** When used, fields 42C and 42a must both be present (Error code(s): C90).

**C2** Either fields 42C and 42a together, or field 42M alone, or field 42P alone may be present. No other combination of these fields is allowed (Error code(s): C90).

**C3** Either field 44C or 44D, but not both, may be present (Error code(s): D06).

## MT 798<701> - LC Application Extension

<b>Section 1 - MT 798 Structure</b>					
<b>No.</b>	<b>Tag</b>	<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Format</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines</b>
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;701&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;701&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 701.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;701&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>
<b>No.</b>	<b>Tag</b>	<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Format</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines</b>
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;701&gt; the message index number must start with a value of 3 for the first MT 798&lt;701&gt; in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798&lt;701&gt;, e.g., 3/4, 4/4, or 3/5, 4/5, 5/5.</p> <p>NOTE: field is not present in the MT 701 Message Reference Guide.</p>

2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the Application number which has been assigned by the Applicant.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 701 Message Reference Guide.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
2.3		<b>MT 701 Message</b>		O	<p>MT 701 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)</p> <p><i>Fields listed here below for your convenience</i></p> <p>NOTE: A maximum of seven MT 798&lt;701&gt;s are permitted.</p>
2.4	27	Sequence of Total	1!n/1!n (Number)(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the number of this message in the series of messages sent for a documentary credit, and the total number of messages in the series.</p> <p>NOTE: A maximum of seven MT 798&lt;701&gt;s are permitted.</p>
2.5	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number which has been assigned by the Sender.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;701&gt; this field must specify a documentary credit number, pre-assigned by the applicant's bank, or a fixed value of NONREF.</p>
2.6	45A	Description of Goods and/or Services	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of the goods and/or services.
2.7	46A	Documents Required	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of any documents required.
2.8	47A	Additional Conditions	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of further conditions of the documentary credit.
2.9	49G	Special Payment Conditions for Beneficiary	100*65z	O	DEFN: This field specifies special payment conditions applicable to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions.

2.10	49H	Special Payment Conditions for Bank Only	100*65z	O	DEFN: This field specifies special payment conditions applicable to a bank without disclosure to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions. Content of the field must specify to which bank it is addressed.
------	-----	---	---------	---	--

## Business Example 1

Please note that for the following examples, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the transfer requested.

### Narrative

ABC Company, Kaeerntnerstrasse 3, Vienna, imports beer from Amdam Company, PO Box 123, Amsterdam, under a documentary credit.

ABC Co.'s bank is RZB, Vienna.

In addition to the above information, the documentary credit application is comprised of the following:

Type of Credit:	IRREVOCABLE
Documentary Credit Application Number:	7890123
Expiry Date:	30-Jul-20
Place of Expiry:	Amsterdam
Amount:	Euro 100,000
Debit Account	1234567891
Advising Bank:	ING BANK
	Amsterdam
Available With:	Advising Bank
	By sight payment
Shipment:	400,000 Bottles of beer
	Packed 12 to an export carton
	FCA Amsterdam
Against presentation of the following documents through the Advising Bank:	Signed Commercial Invoice in Quintuplicate Forwarding Agent's Certificate of Receipt, showing goods addressed to Applicant.

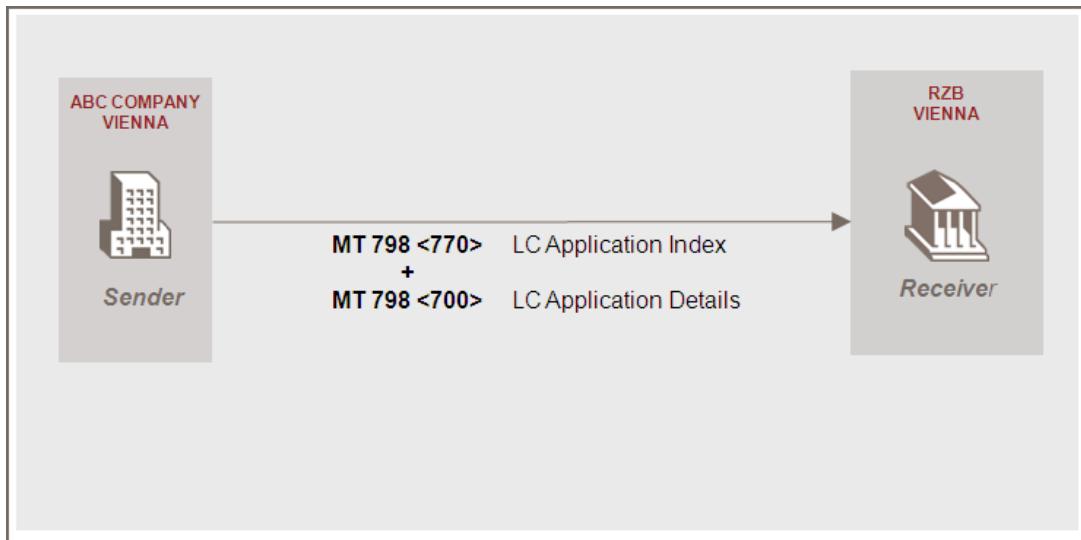
Documents are to be presented within 6 days after the date of issuance of the Forwarding Agent's Certificate of Receipt (FCR).

Confirmation is requested.

Taking in charge at Amsterdam for transportation to Vienna.

Transhipment and partial shipments are permitted.

## Information Flow



## SWIFT Messages

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;770&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ABCOBEB3
Message Type	798
Receiver	RZBAATWW
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:B09290104112078T
Sub-message type	:12: <b>770</b>
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21A:7890123-001 :21T:7890123 :25F:FINAL :13E:202001151218 :24D:TELE :53C:/1234567891 :71A:BEN :29A:WILSON PICKET +3224567841

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;700&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ABCOBEB3
Message Type	798
Receiver	RZBAATWW
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:B09290104112079T
Sub-message type	:12:700
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21A: 7890123-001 :27:1/1 :40A:IRREVOCABLE :20:NONREF :31C:200430 :40E:UCP LATEST VERSION :31D:200730AMSTERDAM :50:ABC COMPANY KAERNERSTRASSE 3 VIENNA :59:AMDAM COMPANY PO BOX 123 AMSTERDAM :32B:EUR100000, :41A:BACOARBA BY PAYMENT :43P:ALLOWED :43T:ALLOWED :44A:AMSTERDAM :44B:VIENNA :45A:+400,000 BOTTLES OF BEER PACKED 12 TO AN EXPORT CARTON +FCA AMSTERDAM :46A:+SIGNED COMMERCIAL INVOICE IN QUINTuplicate + FORWARDING AGENTS CERTIFICATE OF RECEIPT SHOWING GOODS ADDRESSED TO THE APPLICANT :48:6/FCR :49:CONFIRM

## Business Example 2

### Narrative

Solvia AB. PO Box 123, Upsala, Sweden, intends to import computer and electrical parts from Proquinal S.A., 48 rue de la Bourse, Brussels, under a documentary credit.

The documentary credit is in US dollars.

Sovia AB banks with SEB, Stockholm.

Proquinal S.A. banks with BNP Paribas Fortis, Brussels.

The following information comprises the documentary credit application:

Type of Credit:	IRREVOCABLE
Documentary Credit Application Number:	N66758
Expiry Date:	30 July 2020
Place of Expiry:	Brussels
Amount:	US Dollars 31,500
Available With:	Advising Bank by acceptance of Beneficiary's draft drawn at 30 days after bill of lading date on BNP Paribas Fortis Bank
Shipment:	1 2269d 1/2, 2,5 tb-p + 2,5 tb-r disk drive 1 memory rom 210-6298 1 power regulator 210-0341 1 rom t-loading 210-6705 1 power supply regulator 210-6756 1 coss interface 210-7068 1 ribbon assy 279-0181 2 hub lamp assy 726-1021 1 air filter 726-0414
INCOTERMS	CIF Stockholm

Documents Required/Special Conditions:

- Signed Commercial Invoice in Sevenfold
- 2/3 clean on board ocean bills of lading marked freight prepaid consigned to the order of beneficiaries and endorsed in blank, marked notify applicant with full name and address, dated not later than 21 July 2020
- copy certificate of origin showing goods of Belgian origin
- copy consular invoice mentioning import registration number 123
- 1/2 insurance policy for 110 percent of invoice value, covering all risks and war risks and srcc as per institute cargo clauses, including warehouse to warehouse clause
- packing list in 4 copies
- copy of airmail letter addressed to the applicant showing that one original of all documents have been sent directly to them within three days after bill of lading date
- the certificate of origin may also indicate that goods are of EEC origin instead of Belgian origin
- drafts are to be marked as drawn under this documentary credit
- documents must be presented within 10 days after bill of lading date
- please advise beneficiaries adding your confirmation
- all documents must be forwarded to us in one lot
- all charges are for account of the beneficiary except commission related to the acceptance of the draft

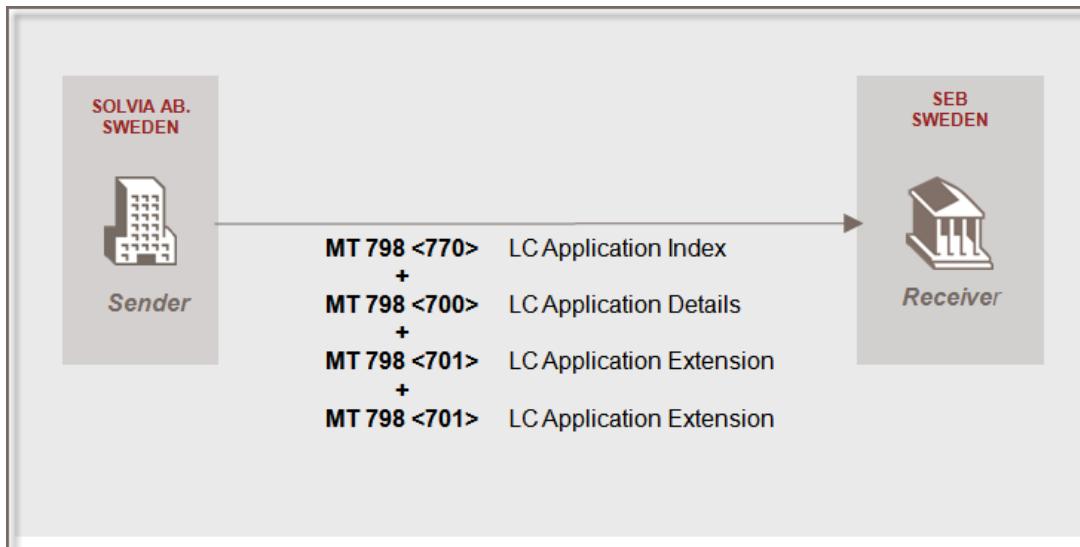
Shipment is from Antwerp to Stockholm.

At maturity of the draft, reimbursement is to be claimed at JPMorgan Chase Bank, New York.

Transhipment and partial shipments are not allowed.

The credit is subject to ICC UCP 600.

### Information Flow



### SWIFT Messages

Note: The number of characters in the following messages does not exceed the maximum input message length. Four MT 798 messages are used to illustrate the use of a combination of enveloped MT 700 and MT 701 messages.

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;770&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	SOLCORP3
Message Type	798
Receiver	ESSESESS
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y067844451
Sub-message type	:12: <b>770</b>
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/4 :21A:N66758-003 :21T:N66758 :25F:FINAL :13E:202001151218 :24D:TELE :53C:/9876543211 :71A:OTH :73A:ALL CHARGES ARE FOR ACCOUNT OF THE BENEFICIARY EXCEPT COMMISSION RELATED TO THE ACCEPTANCE OF THE DRAFT :29A:BILBO BAGGINS +3224567841

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;700&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	SOLCORP3
Message Type	798
Receiver	ESSESESS
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y067844452
Sub-message type	:12:700
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/4 :21A: N66758-003 :27:1/3 :40A:IRREVOCABLE :20:DC.IMP 3410/3444 :31C:200730 :40E:UCP LATEST VERSION :31D:200730BRUSSELS :50:SOLVIA AB PO BOX 123 UPSALA, SWEDEN :59:PROQUINAL S.A. 48 RUE DE LA BOURSE BRUSSELS :32B:USD31500, :41A:GEBABEBB BY ACCEPTANCE :42C:30 DAYS AFTER BLADING :42A:GEBABEBB36A :43P:NOT ALLOWED :43T:NOT ALLOWED :44A:ANTWERP :44B:STOCKHOLM :47A:+THE CERTIFICATE OF ORIGIN MAY ALSO INDICATE THAT GOODS ARE OF EEC ORIGIN INSTEAD OF BELGIAN ORIGIN +DRAFTS ARE TO BE MARKED AS DRAWN UNDER THIS DOCUMENTARY CREDIT :48:010/AFTER BOL DATE :49:CONFIRM

<b>SWIFT Message – 3 MT 798 &lt;701&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	SOLCORP3
Message Type	798
Receiver	ESSESESS
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y067844453
Sub-message type	:12: <b>701</b>
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:3/4 :21A: N66758-003 :27:2/3 :20:NONREF :45A:+1 2269D 1/2, 2,5 TB-P + 2,5 TB-R DISKDRIVE +1 MEMORY ROM 210-6298 +1 POWER REGULATOR 210-0341 +1 ROM T-LOADING 210-6705 +1 POWER SUPPLY REGULATOR 210-6756 +1 COSS INTERFACE 210-7068 +1 RIBBON ASSY 279-0181 +2 HUB LAMP ASSY 726-1021 +1 AIR FILTER 726-0414 +CIF STOCKHOLM

<b>SWIFT Message – 4 MT 798 &lt;701&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	SOLCORP3
Message Type	798
Receiver	ESSESESS
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y067844454
Sub-message type	:12:701
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:4/4 :21A: N66758-003 :27:3/3 :20:NONREF :46A:+SIGNED COMMERCIAL INVOICE IN SEVENFOLD +2/3 CLEAN ON BOARD OCEAN BILLS OF LADING MARKED FREIGHT PREPAID CONSIGNMENT TO THE ORDER OF BENEFICIARY'S AND ENDORSED IN BLANK, MARKED NOTIFY APPLICANT WITH FULL NAME AND ADDRESS, DATED NOT LATER THAN 21 JULY 2020 +COPY CERTIFICATE OF ORIGIN SHOWING GOODS OF BELGIAN ORIGIN +COPY CONSULAR INVOICE MENTIONING IMPORT REGISTRATION NUMBER 123 +1/2 INSURANCE POLICY FOR 110 PERCENT OF INVOICE VALUE, COVERING ALL RISKS AND WAR RISKS AND SRCC AS PER INSTITUTE CARGO CLAUSES, INCLUDING WAREHOUSE TO WAREHOUSE CLAUSE +PACKING LIST IN 4 COPIES +COPY OF AIRMAIL LETTER ADDRESSED TO THE APPLICANT SHOWING THAT ONE ORIGINAL OF ALL DOCUMENTS HAVE BEEN SENT DIRECTLY TO THEM WITHIN THREE DAYS AFTER BILL OF LADING DATE

## 2.1.2 Notification of Draft or Issuance of Documentary Credit

### Scope

The Notification of Draft or Issuance of Documentary Credit is sent to the corporate (applicant) by its bank and comprises a series of MT 798 messages. Collectively these messages are used to provide a draft of the documentary credit or to notify the issuance of a documentary credit by the issuing bank and to stipulate the terms, and conditions under which the credit has been issued.

## Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Notification of Draft or Issuance must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 771 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 700 message, specific to the bank-to-corporate exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 700 and enveloping one MT 700 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 700 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.
- In addition, up to a maximum of seven MT 798 messages may optionally be included, each identified with a sub-message type of 701 and enveloping one MT 701 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 701 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

The Notification of Draft or Issuance of Documentary Credit does not constitute an operative credit instrument.

The Notification of Draft or Issuance of Documentary Credit should only be sent in response to the receipt by the bank of an Application for Documentary Credit (MT 798<770/700/701>).

## MT 798<771> - LC Notification of Draft or Issuance Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message. GUID: For MT 798<771> this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension). RULE: For MT 798<771> the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 771.
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <u>[n*78z][n*145z]</u> 1 (Text)	M	DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver. RULE: For MT 798<771> the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<771> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/3, or 1/4 or 1/5 depending on the number of 701s.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the related customer reference number.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.5	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.6	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number which has been assigned by the bank. RULE: For MT 798<771>, if field 25F is FINAL, this field is mandatory otherwise this field must not be used.
2.7	25F	Text Purpose	5!c	M	DEFN: This field specifies whether the application text is draft or final  CODES:  DRAFT = Proposed application text to facilitate review by the applicant and the applicant's bank. The applicant's bank has not issued an undertaking based on text designated as DRAFT.  FINAL = Notification of issuance of a documentary credit
2.8	12K	Draft Text Version	2!n (Number)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the sequential version number of a draft, assigned by the bank.  RULE: Must not be present if 25F is FINAL.

2.9	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.10	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 of the issuing bank.
2.11	58a	Advising Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the advising bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the advising bank.
2.12	29B	Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the bank.
2.13	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.
2.14	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name. CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute. GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.

2.15	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.16	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.17	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<700> - LC Notification of Draft or Issuance Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;700&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;700&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 700.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;700&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 700]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<700> the message index number must have a fixed value of 2, e.g.,2/4 NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 700 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 700 Message Reference Guide.
2.3		<b>MT 700 Message</b>		M	MT 700 message contents.(Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)

## MT 798<701> - LC Notification of Draft or Issuance Extension

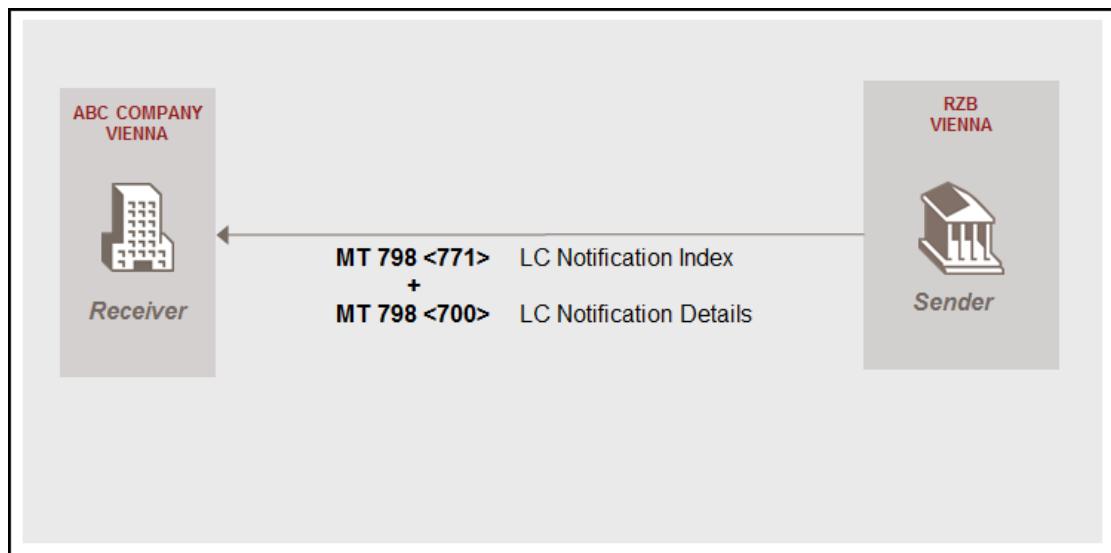
Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;701&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;701&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 701.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;701&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 701]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;701&gt; the message index number must start with a value of 3 for the first MT 798&lt;701&gt; in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798&lt;701&gt;, e.g., 3/4, 4/4, or 3/5, 4/5, 5/5.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 701 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
2.3		<b>MT 701 Message</b>		O	<p>MT 701 message contents.(Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)</p> <p>NOTE: A maximum of seven MT 798&lt;701&gt;s are permitted.</p>

## Business Example

For details of the Documentary credit, please see “business example 1” of application for documentary credit

### Information Flow



### SWIFT Messages

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;771&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	RZBAATWW
Message Type	798
Receiver	ABCOBEB3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:B09290104112078T
Sub-message type	:12:771
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21A:7890123-123 :21T:7890123 :21P:RZB67439843/111 :21S:RZB67439843 :20:DOC65231245 :25F:FINAL :13E:202001181220 :52A:RZBAATWW

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;700&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	RZBAATWW
Message Type	798
Receiver	ABCOBEB3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:B09290104112079T
Sub-message type	:12: <b>700</b>
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P: RZB67439843/111 :27:1/1 :40A:IRREVOCABLE :20:DOC65231245 :31C:200430 :40E:UCP LATEST VERSION :31D:200730AMSTERDAM :50:ABC COMPANY KAERNERSTRASSE 3 VIENNA :59:AMDAM COMPANY PO BOX 123 AMSTERDAM :32B:EUR100000, :41A:BACOARBA BY PAYMENT :43P:ALLOWED :43T:ALLOWED :44A:AMSTERDAM :44B:VIENNA :45A:+400,000 BOTTLES OF BEER PACKED 12 TO AN EXPORT CARTON +FCA AMSTERDAM :46A:+SIGNED COMMERCIAL INVOICE IN QUINTuplicate + FORWARDING AGENTS CERTIFICATE OF RECEIPT SHOWING GOODS ADDRESSED TO THE APPLICANT :48:6/FCR :49:CONFIRM

## 2.1.3 Request for Amendment of Documentary Credit

### Scope

The Request for Amendment of Documentary Credit is sent by the corporate (applicant) to itsbank and comprises a series of MT 798 (Proprietary) messages. Collectively these messages are used to request amendment/s of the terms and conditions of a credit previously issued by the applicant's bank.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Request for Amendment must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 772 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 707 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 707 and enveloping one MT 707 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 707 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.
- In addition, up to a maximum of seven MT 798 messages may optionally be included, each identified with a sub-message type of 708 and enveloping one MT 708 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 708 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document.

Each MT 798 message for a single Request for Amendment must be identified with the same Customer Reference Number, specified as field 21A, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

The Request for Amendment of Documentary Credit does not constitute an operative credit instrument.

**MT 798<772> - LC Request for Amendment Index**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;772&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;772&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 772.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;772&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<772> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/2.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the amendment reference number which has been assigned by the corporate. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number which has been assigned by the bank.
2.5	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.6	24D	Method of Issue	4!c/[35x] (Method)(Additional Information)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the method by which a documentary credit amendment is to be issued. CODES: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• TELE = Telecommunication/SWIFT</li><li>• PSTW = Post</li><li>• COUW = Courier (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li></ul> RULE: For MT 798<772> additional information may only be used when the method is COUW, to optionally specify the name of the courier.

2.7	71A	Amendment Bank Charges Payable By	3!a (Code)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the party(s) responsible for the documentary credit amendment charges.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• BEN = Beneficiary pays all charges</li> <li>• OUR = Applicant pays all charges</li> <li>• SHA = All charges within Issuing Bank are for account of the applicant and all charges outside Issuing Bank are for account of the beneficiary</li> <li>• OTH = Other arrangement</li> </ul> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;772&gt;, field 73A 'Charges Information' must be used to specify the additional charges information when code is = OTH.</p> <p>RULE: Field 71N of included MT 707 must not be used for this purpose.</p> <p>GUID: To amend the charges for the documentary credit itself, this should be requested in Field 72.</p>
2.8	73A	Charges Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the documentary credit charges.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;772&gt;, only used if field 71A 'Bank Charges Payable By' is = OTH.</p>
2.9	29A	Customer Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the corporate.
2.10	72Z	Corporate to Bank Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the issuing bank.

2.11	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.12	26E	Number of Amendment	3n (Number)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the number which identifies this amendment.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;772&gt; this number must be the same as field 26E in the accompanying MT 798&lt;707&gt;</p>
2.13	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.14	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.15	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<707> - LC Request for Amendment Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;707&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;707&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 707.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;707&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 707]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<707> the message index number must have a fixed value of 2, e.g., 2/2. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 707 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the amendment reference number which has been assigned by the corporate. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 707 Message</b>		M	MT 707 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) Fields listed here below for convenience.
2.4	27	Sequence of Total	1!n/1!n	M	DEFN: This field specifies the number of this message in the series of messages sent for a documentary credit amendment, and the total number of messages in the series.
2.5	20	Sender's Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message. RULE: For MT 798<707> this field must be the documentary credit number.
2.6	21	Receiver's Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field contains the reference number assigned to the documentary credit by the Receiver of the message. RULE: For MT 798<707> this field must specify a fixed value of NONREF
2.7	23	Issuing Bank's Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number of the issuing bank

2.8	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a] [/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: This field is used to identify the issuing bank, when different from the Sender of the message. RULE: For MT 798<707> this field is not used.
2.9	50B	Non-Bank Issuer	<b>B</b> 4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the non-bank issuer of the credit.
2.10	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date of the original issue of the documentary credit, i.e., the date on which the issuing bank considers the credit as being issued.
2.11	26E	Number of Amendment	3n (Number)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the number which identifies this amendment. RULE: For MT 798<707> this number starts at 1 and is incremented by 1 for each subsequent amendment to the same documentary credit.
2.12	30	Date of Amendment	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the credit as being amended. GUID: the value of this field is discarded by the receiver in the request.
2.13	22A	Purpose of Message	4!c	M	DEFN: This field specifies the purpose of this message. GUID: only value allowed from corporate in MT 798<707> is: ISSU Issuance of the credit amendment
2.14	23S	Cancellation Request	6!a	O	DEFN: This field specifies that the instrument is requested to be cancelled. If present, this field must contain the word CANCEL

2.15	40A	Form of Documentary Credit	24x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the type of credit, if changed. It must contain one of the following codes IRREVOCABLE The documentary credit is irrevocable IRREVOCABLE TRANSFERABLE The documentary credit is irrevocable and transferable
2.16	40E	Applicable Rules	30x/[35x]	O	DEFN: This field specifies the rules the credit is subject to, if changed. Note: Narrative may only be used when code is OTHR.
2.17	31D	Date and Place of Expiry	6!n29x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the latest date for presentation under the documentary credit and the place where documents may be presented, if changed.
2.18	50	Changed Applicant Details	4*35x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the party on behalf of which the documentary credit is being issued, if details have changed.
2.18	59	Beneficiary	[/34x] (Account) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the party in favour of which the documentary credit is issued, if changed. NOTE: For MT 798<707>, if beneficiary account number is specified, the account is serviced by the Advising Bank specified in field 58a in the opening MT 798<770>.
2.19	32B	Increase of Documentary Credit Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency and amount of an increase in the documentary credit amount, if changed.
2.20	33B	Decrease of Documentary Credit Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of a decrease in the documentary credit amount, if changed.

2.21	39A	Percentage Credit Amount Tolerance	2n/2n (Tolerance 1)(Tolerance 2)	O	DEFN: When the credit amount tolerance is being amended, this field specifies the new tolerance relative to the documentary credit amount as a percentage plus and/or minus that amount, if changed.
2.22	39C	Additional Amounts Covered	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies amendments to any additional amounts covered, such as insurance, freight, interest, etc if changed.
2.23	41a	Available With... By ...	A 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) 14x (Code) D 4*35x (Name and Address) 14x (Code)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the bank with which the credit is available (the place for presentation) and an indication of how the credit is available, if these elements have changed.
2.24	42C	Drafts at ...	3*35x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the tenor of drafts to be drawn under the documentary credit, if changed.
2.25	42a	Drawee	A [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) D [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the drawee of the drafts to be drawn under the documentary credit, if changed.
2.26	42M	Mixed Payment Details	4*35x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the payment dates, amounts and/or method for their determination in a documentary credit which is available by mixed payment, if these elements have changed.
2.27	42P	Negotiation/Deferred Payment Details	4*35x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the payment date or method for its determination in a documentary credit which is available by deferred payment or negotiation only, if these elements have changed.
2.28	43P	Partial Shipments	11x	O	DEFN: This field specifies whether or not partial shipments are allowed under the documentary credit, if changed.  One of the following code words must be used ALLOWED   CONDITIONAL   NOT ALLOWED.
2.29	43T	Transhipment	11x	O	DEFN: This field specifies whether or not transhipment is allowed under the documentary credit, if changed.  One of the following code words must be used ALLOWED   CONDITIONAL   NOT ALLOWED.

2.30	44A	Place of Taking in Charge/Dispatch from .../Place of Receipt	1* <del>140z65x</del> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies amendments to the place of taking in charge (in case of a multimodal transport document), the place of receipt (in case of a road, rail or inland waterway transport document or a courier or expedited delivery service document), the place of dispatch or the place of shipment to be indicated on the transport document.
2.31	44E	Port of Loading/Airport of Departure	1* <del>140z65x</del> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies amendments to the port of loading or airport of departure to be indicated on the transport document.
2.32	44F	Port of Discharge/Airport of Destination	1* <del>140z65x</del> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies amendments to the port of discharge or airport of destination to be indicated on the transport document.
2.33	44B	Place of Final Destination/For Transportation to .../Place of Delivery	1* <del>140z65x</del> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies amendments to the final destination or place of delivery to be indicated on the transport document.
2.34	44C	Latest Date of Shipment	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies amendments to the latest date for loading on board/dispatch/taking in charge, if changed.
2.35	44D	Shipment Period	6*65x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies amendments to the period of time during which the goods are to be loaded on board/ despatched/taken in charge, if changed.  RULE: For MT 798<707>, if field 44C is used, field 44D must not be used.
2.36	45B	Description of Goods and/or Services	100*65z	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of the goods and/or services.  CODES  One or more of the following codes must be used in Code (Error code(s): T67):  ADD Add Must be followed by the text to be added (a sentence, paragraph or line item)  DELETE Delete Must be followed by the text to be deleted (a sentence, paragraph or line item)  REPALL Replace all Must be followed by the text

2.37	46B	Documents Required	100*65z	O	<p>DEFN: This field contains a description of any documents required, if changed.</p> <p><b>CODES</b></p> <p>One or more of the following codes must be used in Code (Error code(s): T67):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ADD Add Must be followed by the text to be added (a sentence, paragraph or line item)</li> <li>DELETE Delete Must be followed by the text to be deleted (a sentence, paragraph or line item)</li> <li>REPALL Replace all Must be followed by the text</li> </ul>
2.38	47B	Additional Conditions	100*65z	O	<p>DEFN: This field contains a description of further conditions of the documentary credit, if changed.</p> <p><b>CODES</b></p> <p>One or more of the following codes must be used in Code (Error code(s): T67):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ADD Add Must be followed by the text to be added (a sentence, paragraph or line item)</li> <li>DELETE Delete Must be followed by the text to be deleted (a sentence, paragraph or line item)</li> <li>REPALL Replace all Must be followed by the text</li> </ul>
2.39	49M	Special Payment Conditions for Beneficiary	100*65z	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies special payment conditions, if changed, applicable to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions, if changed.</p> <p><b>CODES</b></p> <p>One or more of the following codes must be used in Code (Error code(s): T67):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ADD Add Must be followed by the text to be added (a sentence, paragraph or line item)</li> <li>DELETE Delete Must be followed by the text to be deleted (a sentence, paragraph or line item)</li> <li>REPALL Replace all Must be followed by the text</li> </ul>

2.40	49N	Special Payment Conditions for Bank Only	100*65z	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies special payment conditions applicable to a bank without disclosure to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions. Content of the field must specify to which bank it is addressed.</p> <p><b>CODES</b></p> <p>One or more of the following codes must be used in Code (Error code(s): T67):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ADD Add Must be followed by the text to be added (a sentence, paragraph or line item)</li> <li>DELETE Delete Must be followed by the text to be deleted (a sentence, paragraph or line item)</li> <li>REPALL Replace all Must be followed by the text</li> </ul>
2.41	71D	Charges	6*35z	O	DEFN: This field may be used only to specify charges to be borne by the beneficiary, if changed.
2.42	71N	Amendment Charge Payable By	4!c [6*35z]	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the party responsible for this amendment charge.</p> <p><b>CODES:</b> APPL   BENE   OTHR</p> <p>Narrative text may only be used with code OTHR.</p> <p><b>RULE:</b> this field is not used in the request.</p>
2.43	48	Period for Presentation in Days	3n/[35x] (Days)(Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the new number of calendar days after the date of shipment within which the documents must be presented for payment, acceptance, or negotiation. Narrative should only be used to specify another type of date than a shipment date, for example invoice date, from which the period for presentation begins.
2.44	49	Confirmation Instructions	7!x	O	DEFN: This field contains confirmation instructions for the Receiver (advising bank), if changed.
2.45	58a	Requested Confirmation Party	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/34x (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: Bank which is requested to add its confirmation or may add its confirmation, if changed.

2.46	53a	Reimbursing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/34x (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the bank which has been authorised by the Sender to reimburse drawings under the documentary credit, if changed. This may be a branch of the Sender or the Receiver, or an entirely different bank.  RULE: this field may not be filled by the corporate.
2.47	78	Instructions to the Paying/Accepting/Negotiating Bank	12*65x	O	DEFN: This field specifies instructions to the paying, accepting, or negotiating bank, if changed.
2.48	57a	'Advise Through' Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>B</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) [/35x] (Location) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/34x (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the bank, if different from the Receiver, through which the documentary credit amendment is to be advised to the beneficiary.
2.49	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the Receiver.  RULE: For MT 798<707> this field is not used.

### MT 707 Network Validated Rules

- C1 At least one field must be present after field 22A (Error code(s): C30).
- C2 Either field 32B or 33B may be present, but not both (Error code(s): C12).
- C3 Either field 52a or field 50B, but not both, must be present (Error code(s): C06).
- C4 Either field 44C or field 44D, but not both, must be present (Error code(s): D06).

## MT 798<708> - LC Amendment Extension

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;708&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;708&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 708.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	<p>73z (Text)  <u>[n*78z][n*145z]</u>  <u>1</u> (Text)</p>	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;708&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 708]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 708 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the amendment reference number which has been assigned by the corporate. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.4		<b>MT 708 Message</b>		M	MT 708 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) NOTE: A maximum of seven MT 798<708>s are permitted.
2.5	27	Sequence of Total	1!n/1!n	M	DEFN: This field specifies the number of this message in the series of messages sent for a documentary credit amendment, and the total number of messages in the series.
2.6	20	Sender's Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.
2.7	21	Receiver's Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field contains the reference number assigned to the documentary credit by the Receiver of the message. RULE: For MT 798<708> this field must specify a fixed value of NONREF
2.8	23	Issuing Bank's Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number which was assigned by the issuing bank.
2.9	26E	Number of Amendment	3n	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number that identifies this amendment.
2.10	30	Date of Amendment	6!n	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the documentary credit amendment is issued.

2.11	45B	Description of Goods and/or Services	100*65z	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies amendments to the goods and/or services.</p> <p><b>CODES</b></p> <p>One or more of the following codes must be used in Code (Error code(s): T67):</p> <p>ADD Add Must be followed by the text to be added (a sentence, paragraph or line item)</p> <p>DELETE Delete Must be followed by the text to be deleted (a sentence, paragraph or line item)</p> <p>REPALL Replace all Must be followed by the text</p>
2.12	46B	Documents Required	100*65z	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies amendments to the documents required.</p> <p><b>CODES</b></p> <p>One or more of the following codes must be used in Code (Error code(s): T67):</p> <p>ADD Add Must be followed by the text to be added (a sentence, paragraph, or line item)</p> <p>DELETE Delete Must be followed by the text to be deleted (a sentence, paragraph, or line item)</p> <p>REPALL Replace all Must be followed by the text</p>
2.13	47B	Additional Conditions	100*65z	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies amendments to the conditions of the documentary credit.</p> <p><b>CODES</b></p> <p>One or more of the following codes must be used in Code (Error code(s): T67):</p> <p>ADD Add Must be followed by the text to be added (a sentence, paragraph, or line item)</p> <p>DELETE Delete Must be followed by the text to be deleted (a sentence, paragraph, or line item)</p> <p>REPALL Replace all Must be followed by the text</p>

2.14	49M	Special Payment Conditions for Beneficiary	100*65z	O	<p><b>DEFN:</b> This field specifies special payment conditions applicable to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions.</p> <p><b>CODES</b></p> <p>One or more of the following codes must be used in Code (Error code(s): T67):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ADD Add Must be followed by the text to be added (a sentence, paragraph, or line item)</li> <li>DELETE Delete Must be followed by the text to be deleted (a sentence, paragraph, or line item)</li> <li>REPALL Replace all Must be followed by the text</li> </ul>
2.15	49N	Special Payment Conditions for Bank Only	100*65z	O	<p><b>DEFN:</b> This field specifies special payment conditions applicable to a bank without disclosure to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions. Content of the field must specify to which bank it is addressed.</p> <p><b>CODES</b></p> <p>One or more of the following codes must be used in Code (Error code(s): T67):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ADD Add Must be followed by the text to be added (a sentence, paragraph, or line item)</li> <li>DELETE Delete Must be followed by the text to be deleted (a sentence, paragraph, or line item)</li> <li>REPALL Replace all Must be followed by the text</li> </ul>

## Business Example 1

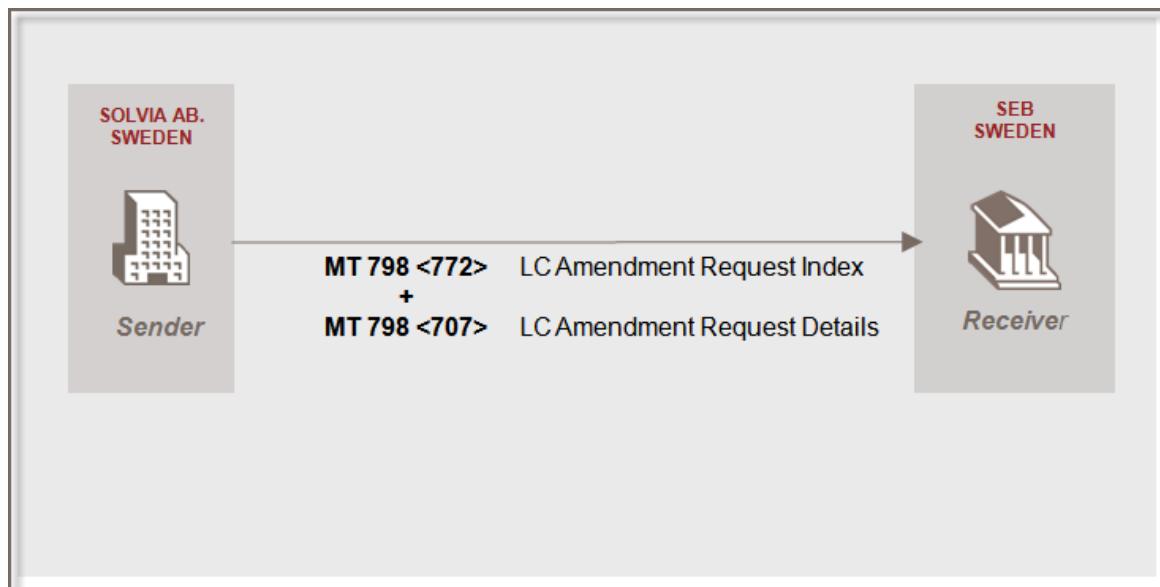
Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

Solvia AB., Uppsala, Sweden an importer, requests an amendment of a documentary credit issued by SEB. The following changes are requested to the terms and conditions of the documentary credit issued DC.IMP 3410/3444:

- The expiry date of the credit has been extended to 30 September 2020.
- The amount of the credit has been increased by USD 3,250 to USD 34,750.
- The bill of lading is to be issued not later than 20 September 2020.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;772&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	SOLCORP3
Message Type	798
Receiver	ESSESESS
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y8967851
Sub-message type	:12:772
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21A:N66758-123 :21T:N66758 :20:DC.IMP 3410/3444 :13E:202001151218 :24D:TELE :71A:BEN

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;707&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	GEBABEBB
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y8967852
Sub-message type	:12:707
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21A: N66758-123 :27:1/1 :20:DC.IMP 3410/3444 :21:NONREF :23:DC.IMP 3410/3444 :52A: ESSESESS :31C:090521 :26E:01 :30:200621 :22A:ISSU :31D: 200930AMSTERDAM :32B:USD3250, :46B:/ADD/BILLS OF LADING TO BE ISSUED NOT LATER THAN 20 SEPTEMBER 2020

## 2.1.4 Notification of Amendment of Documentary Credit

### Scope

The Notification of Amendment of Documentary Credit is sent to the corporate (applicant) by its bank and comprises a series of MT 798 messages. Collectively these messages are used to notify the issuance of a documentary credit amendment by the applicant bank according to the applicant's instruction received.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Notification of Amendment must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 773 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 707 message, specific to the bank-to-corporate exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 707 and enveloping one MT 707 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 707 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.
- In addition, up to a maximum of seven MT 798 messages may optionally be included, each identified with a sub-message type of 708 and enveloping one MT 708 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 708 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document.

The flow Notification of Amendment must be identified with the same Customer Reference Number as received by the bank from the corporate in the original amendment request. This number is specified in field 21A, the second field encapsulated by field 77E, in the MT 798 Notification of Amendment index.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

The Notification of Amendment of Documentary Credit does not constitute an operative credit instrument.

The Notification of Amendment of Documentary Credit should only be sent in response to the receipt by the bank of a Request for Amendment of Documentary Credit (MT 798<772/707>).

See note about removal of fields not relevant to the corporate in 1.5.

## MT 798<773> - LC Notification of Amendment Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;773&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;773&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 773.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;773&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<773> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/2.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the related reference as received by the bank in the original request from the corporate.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.5	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.6	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number which has been assigned by the bank.
2.7	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.8	29B	Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the bank.
2.9	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.

2.10	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.11	26E	Number of Amendment	3n (Number)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the number which identifies this amendment.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;773&gt; this number must be the same as field 26E in the accompanying MT 798&lt;707&gt;</p>
2.12	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.13	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.14	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<707> - LC Notification of Amendment Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;707&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;707&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 707.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;707&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 707]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<707> the message index number must have a fixed value of 2, e.g., 2/2. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 707 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 707 Message</b>		M	MT 707 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) RULE: For MT 798<707> in field 20 (Sender's Reference), this must specify the documentary credit number.

## MT 798<708> - LC Amendment Extension

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;708&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;708&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 708.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;708&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 708]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 708 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the issuing bank to the documentary credit amendment. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 708 Message</b>		M	MT 708 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) NOTE: A maximum of seven MT 798<708>s are permitted.

## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the amendment requested.

### Narrative

Solvia AB., Upsala, Sweden an importer, requests an amendment of a documentary credit issued by SEB. The following changes are requested to the terms and conditions of the documentary credit issued DC.IMP 3410/3444:

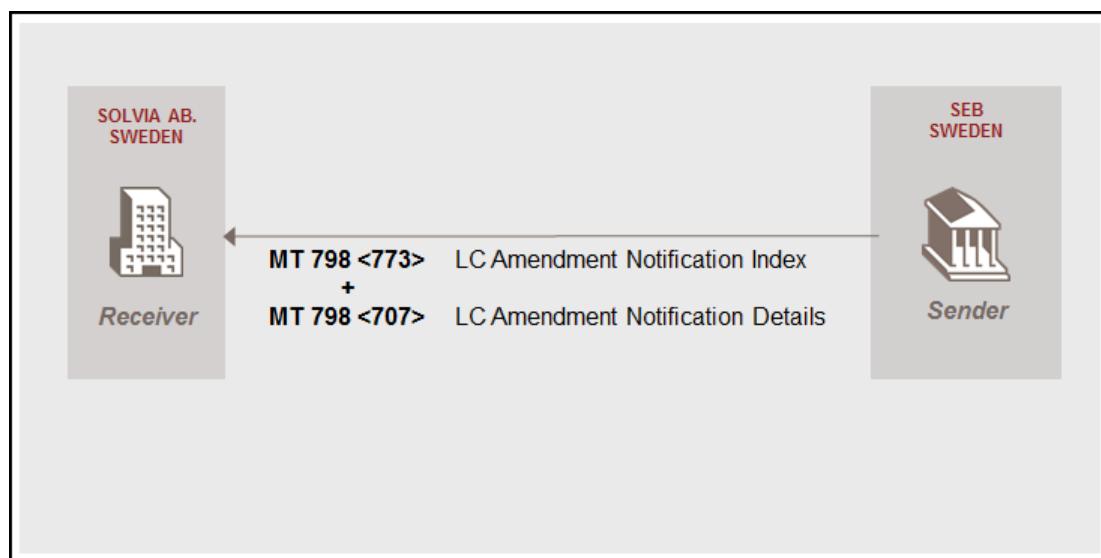
- The expiry date of the credit has been extended to 30 September 2020.
- The amount of the credit has been increased by USD 3,250 to USD 34,750.
- The bill of lading is to be issued not later than 20 September 2020

Beneficiary is PROQUINAL S.A. Rue de la Bourse, Brussels

Proquinal S.A. banks with BNP Paribas Fortis, Brussels.

SEB bank, the applicant bank, confirms the issuance of a documentary credit amendment according to the applicant's instruction received.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;773&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y8967851
Sub-message type	:12:773
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21A:7890123-123 :21T:7890123 :21P:DC.3410/3444-111 :21S:DC.3410/3444 :20:DC.IMP 3410/3444 :13E:202001151218 :26E:02

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;707&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y8967852
Sub-message type	:12:707
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21A:7890123 :21P:DC.3410/3444-111 :27:1/1 :20:DC.IMP 3410/3444 :21:NONREF :23:DC.IMP 3410/3444 :31C:200521 :26E:01 :30:200621 :22A:ADVI :31E:200930 :32B:USD3250, :46B:/ADD/BILLS OF LADING TO BE ISSUED NOT LATER THAN 20 SEPTEMBER 2020

## 2.1.5 Notification of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment

### Scope

The Notification of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment is sent to the corporate (applicant) by its bank and comprises one MT 798 message. It is used to notify the corporate that the amendment has been either accepted or refused by the beneficiary.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Notification of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 736 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for corporate-to-bank exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

## MT 798<736> - Notification of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;736&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;736&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 736.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;736&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<736> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1..
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank. In this case, the documentary credit amendment reference.
2.4	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the corporate customer to the documentary credit amendment or a fixed value of NONREF (in cases where no reference is available).
2.6	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.7	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.8	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.
2.9	52a	Issuing Bank	A [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) D [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the issuing bank.

2.10	29B	Issuing Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the issuing bank.
2.11	30	Date of Amendment	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the credit as being amended.
2.12	26E	Number of Amendment	3n (Number)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the number which identifies this amendment.
2.13	12D	Acceptance Notification	4!c (Code)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the Beneficiary's response to a documentary credit amendment.  CODES: REFU = REFUSED (Not accepted) ACCP = ACCEPTED
2.14	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.
2.15	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.  CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel
2.16	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer  CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.17	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

2.18	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
------	-----	----------------------	-------------------------------------	---	--

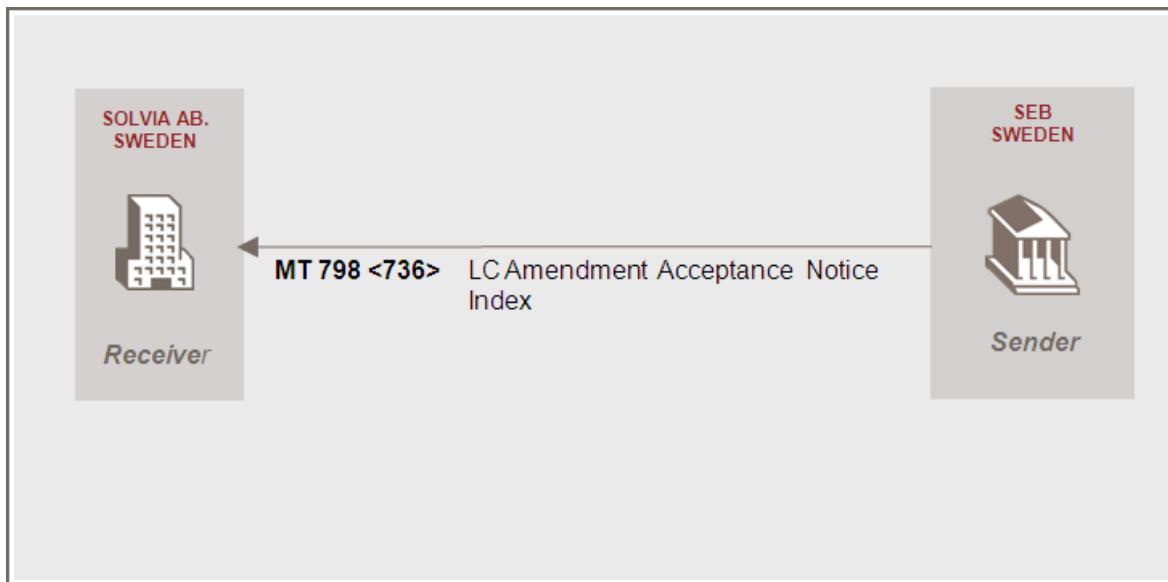
## Business Example 1

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

On the 15 June 2020 Solvia AB., Upsala, Sweden, an importer, received notification that an amendment of a documentary credit issued by SEB has been accepted by the beneficiary:

- Documentary credit issued is numbered DC.IMP6555/6771
- The issue date of the credit is 15 March 2020.
- The amendment is numbered 03 and is dated 4 June 2020.

**Information Flow****SWIFT Messages**

SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 <736>	
Explanation	Format
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:VAB7753-201024
Sub-message type	:12:736
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21P:6555/6771-123 :21S:6555/6771 :20:DC.IMP6555/6771 :21A:76498765789 :31C:200315 :13E:202006151232 :52A:GEBABEBB :30:200604 :26E:03 :12D:ACCP

**2.1.6 Advice of Discrepancy****Scope**

The Advice of Discrepancy is sent to the corporate (applicant) by its bank and comprises up to two MT 798 messages. They are used to advise (either with or without a copy of the MT 750

message) the corporate that documents which have been presented are not in accordance with the terms and conditions of the credit and at the bank's discretion, to request whether the reported discrepancies should be waived or not.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Advice of Discrepancy must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 748 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 750 message, specific to the bank-to-corporate exchange.
- The second, optional, MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 750 and enveloping one MT 750 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 750 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Each MT 798 message for a single Advice of Discrepancy must be identified with the same Bank Reference Number. This number is specified in field 21P, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

This message must be used for documentary credits and may also be used for standby LCs. It must not be used for guarantees.

## MT 798<748> - Advice of Discrepancy Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;748&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;748&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 748.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;748&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<748> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/2.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the corporate customer.
2.6	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.7	21R	Presentation Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the nominated/confirming bank to the documentary presentation.
2.8	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.9	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used for other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.

2.10	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.11	29B	Issuing Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the issuing bank.
2.12	58a	Nominated/Confirming Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the Nominated/Confirming bank, the bank with which the credit is available or is confirmed. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.13	59	Beneficiary	[/34x] (Account) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the party in favour of which the documentary credit was issued, or transferred.
2.14	31S	Date of Receipt	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank received the documents or received the MT 750.
2.15	31T	Waiver Period End Date	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the latest date on which the corporate can waive the discrepancies. RULE: This field must be present when the bank requires the applicant to determine whether the discrepancies can be waived. Otherwise, this field is not used.
2.16	32B	Principal Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount to be deducted from the outstanding balance of the documentary credit. RULE: This field must be used when the MT 798<748> has no accompanying MT 798<750>.
2.17	33B	Additional Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies any additional amount(s) as allowed for in the credit, for example, insurance. RULE: This field may be used when the MT 798<748> has no accompanying MT 798<750>.

2.18	71D	Charges to be Deducted	6*35z (Narrative)  Line 1 /8a/[3!a13d][additional information] (Code)(Currency)(Amount)(Narrative) Lines 2-6 [/continuation of additional information]	O	DEFN: This field specifies charges which have been deducted from the amount of the drawing.  CODES: AGENT = Agent's commission COMM = Our commission CORCOM = Our correspondent's commission DISC = Commercial discount INSUR = Insurance premium POST = Our postage STAMP = Stamp duty TELECHAR = Teletransmission charges WAREHOUS = Wharfing and warehouse  RULE: This field may be used when the MT 798<748> has no accompanying MT 798<750>.
2.19	73A	Charges to be Added	6*35z (Narrative)  Line 1 /8a/[3!a13d][additional information] (Code)(Currency)(Amount)(Narrative) Lines 2-6 [/continuation of additional information]	O	DEFN: This field specifies the charges which have been added to the amount of the drawing.  RULE: This field may be used when the MT 798<748> has no accompanying MT 798<750>.
2.20	34B	Total Amount to be Paid	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and total amount to be remitted to the Sender of the message.  GUID: 34B = 32B + Equivalent of 33B in 32B CCY + Equivalent of sum of 71D in 32B CCY - Equivalent of sum of 73A in 32B CCY  RULE: If field 33B and/or field 71D and/or field 73A is/are present, field 34B must also be present

2.21	77J	Discrepancies	70*50z (Narrative)  Line 1 /8a/[add'l information] Code)(Narrative) Lines 2-70 [/add'l information] (Narrative) or /8a/[add'l information] (Code)(Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the discrepancy(ies) of the document(s).  RULE: This field must be used when the MT 798<748> has no accompanying MT 798<750>.
2.22	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.
2.23	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name, for ancillary documentation / information.  CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel
2.24	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer  CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.25	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.26	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

## MT 798<750> - Advice of Discrepancy Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;750&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;750&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 750.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;750&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 750]					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<750> the message index number must have a fixed value of 2, e.g., 2/2. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 750 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 750 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 750 Message</b>		M	<b>MT 750</b> message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) <i>Fields listed below for your convenience</i> NOTE: Field 20 in the MT 750 represents the reference number assigned by the nominated/confirming bank as the Sender's Reference. Field 21 represents the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank and is specified in the MT 750 by the nominated/confirming bank as the Related Reference. Both of these fields are to remain unchanged when the original MT 750 is imbedded in the MT 798<750>.
2.4	20	Sender's Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field contains the reference number which has been assigned by the Sender.

2.5	21	Related Reference	16x	M	DEFN: If the message is sent to the issuing bank, this field contains the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank. If the message is sent to a bank other than the issuing bank, this field contains either the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank, or another reference meaningful to the Receiver.
2.6	32B	Principal Amount	3!a15d	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount to be deducted from the outstanding balance of the documentary credit.
2.7	33B	Additional Amount	3!a15d	O	DEFN: This field specifies any additional amount(s) as allowed for in the credit, for example, insurance.
2.8	71D	Charges to be Deducted	6*35z	O	DEFN: This field specifies charges which have been deducted from the amount of the drawing.
2.9	73A	Charges to be Added	6*35z	O	DEFN: This field specifies the charges which have been added to the amount of the drawing.
2.10	34B	Total Amount to be Paid	3!a15d	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and total amount to be remitted to the Sender of the message.
2.11	57a	Account With Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>B</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) [35x] (Location) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the bank at which any amounts due are to be remitted in favour of the Sender.
2.12	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z	O	DEFN: This field contains instructions or additional information for the Receiver.
2.13	77J	Discrepancies	70*50z (Narrative) Line 1 /8a/[add'l information] Code)(Narrative) Lines 2-70 [/add'l information] (Narrative) or /8a/[add'l information] (Code)(Narrative)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the discrepancy(ies) of the document(s).

## **MT 750 Network Validated Rules**

**C1** If field 33B and/or field 71D and/or field 73A is/are present, field 34B must also be present (Error code(s): C13).

**C2** The currency code in the amount fields 32B and 34B must be the same (Error code(s): C02).

## Business Example 1

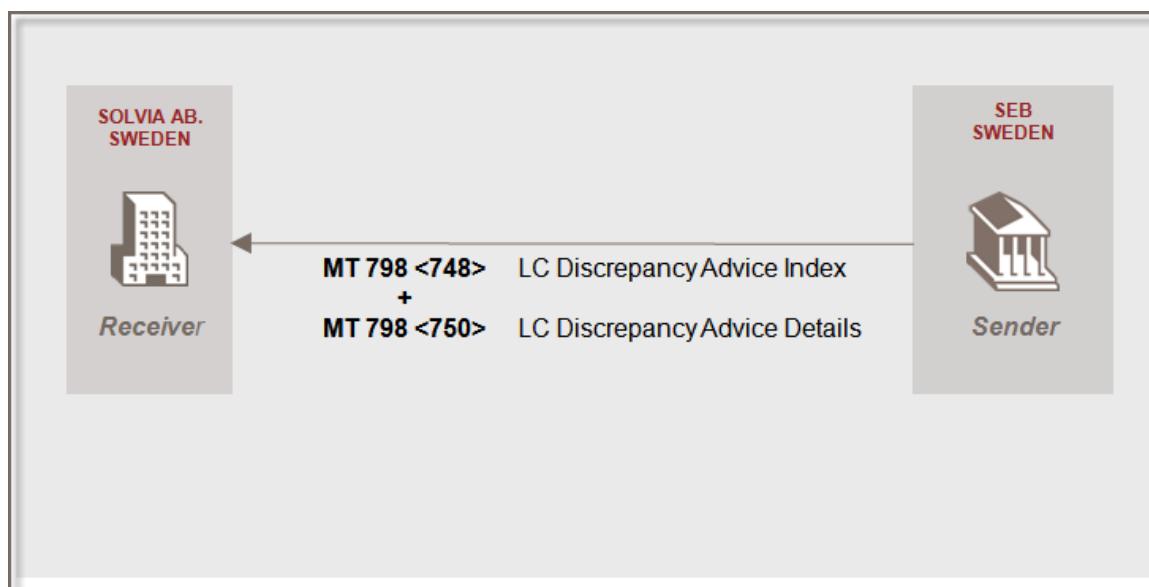
Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

On 17 May 2020, Solvia AB., Upsala, Sweden an importer, received an advice of discrepancies from SEB in a documentary credit that was previously issued by SEB. The following discrepancies were detected by the advising bank and SEB is requesting Solvia AB to advise whether the reported discrepancies should be waived or not:

- The port of loading differs to that specified in the documentary credit.
- The port of discharge differs to that specified in the documentary credit.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;748&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y8967903
Sub-message type	:12:748
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21P:6555/6721-123 :21S:6555/6721 :20:DC.IMP6555/6721 :31C:200317 :13E:202005241321 :52A:GEBABEBB :59:CHANG ELECTRONICS GROUP INC SHENNAN ZHONG ROAD SHENZHEN CHINA :31S:200518 :31T:200529 :77J:REFER MT 750 THAT FOLLOWS

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;750&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y8967904
Sub-message type	:12:750
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:6555/6721-123 :20:EXO667543 :21:DC.IMP6555/6721 :32B:USD34750, :77J:PORTS OF LOADING AND DISCHARGE ARE NOT AS SPECIFIED IN THE LC PORT OF LOADING HONG KONG INSTEAD OF SCHENZHEN PORT OF DISCHARGE LONG BEACH INSTEAD OF SEATTLE

## 2.1.7 Response to Advice of Discrepancy

### Scope

The Response to Advice of Discrepancy is sent by the corporate (applicant) to its issuing bank and comprises one MT 798 message. It is used to advise the bank that the discrepant documents are either to be refused or the reported discrepancies are to be waived.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Response to Advice of Discrepancy must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 749 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for corporate-to-bank exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

## MT 798<749> - Response to Advice of Discrepancy Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;749&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;749&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 749.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;749&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<749> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the customer.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference.
2.6	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.7	21R	Presentation Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the nominated/confirming bank to the documentary presentation.
2.8	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.9	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.
2.10	31S	Date of Receipt	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank received the documents or the MT 750.

2.11	12D	Waiver Instructions	4!c (Code)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the Applicant's instructions regarding waiving of the discrepancies.  CODES: REFU = REFUSED (Waiving of discrepancies refused) AUTH = AUTHORISED (Waiving of discrepancies authorised)
2.12	35B	Principal Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount to be deducted from the outstanding balance of the documentary credit.  GUID: When specified, this field should be identical to the 32B in the MT 798<750> or the MT 798<748> to which this MT 798<749> message is in response.
2.13	32G	Amount of Commission and Charges	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the commission and charges.
2.14	34B	Total Amount to be Paid	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and total amount to be remitted to the Receiver of the message.  GUID: When specified, this field should be identical to the 34B in the MT 798<750> or the MT 798<748> to which this MT 798<749> message is in response.
2.15	30	Value Date	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the value date.
2.16	57a	Account With Bank	A [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) B [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) [35x] (Location) D [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the financial institution at which the amount claimed is to be settled.
2.17	53C	Settlement Account	/34x (Account)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the account number for the settlement of the principal amount and/or any commissions and charges, in the case that for the settlement of commissions and charges field 25A (Alternative Charges Account) is not present.
2.18	25A	Alternative Charges Account	/34x (Account)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the currency and account number for the settlement of commissions and charges, if different to the Settlement Account, field 53C.

2.19	29A	Customer Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the corporate.
2.20	72Z	Corporate to Bank Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the bank.
2.21	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name, for ancillary documentation / information.  CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel
2.22	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer  CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.23	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.24	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

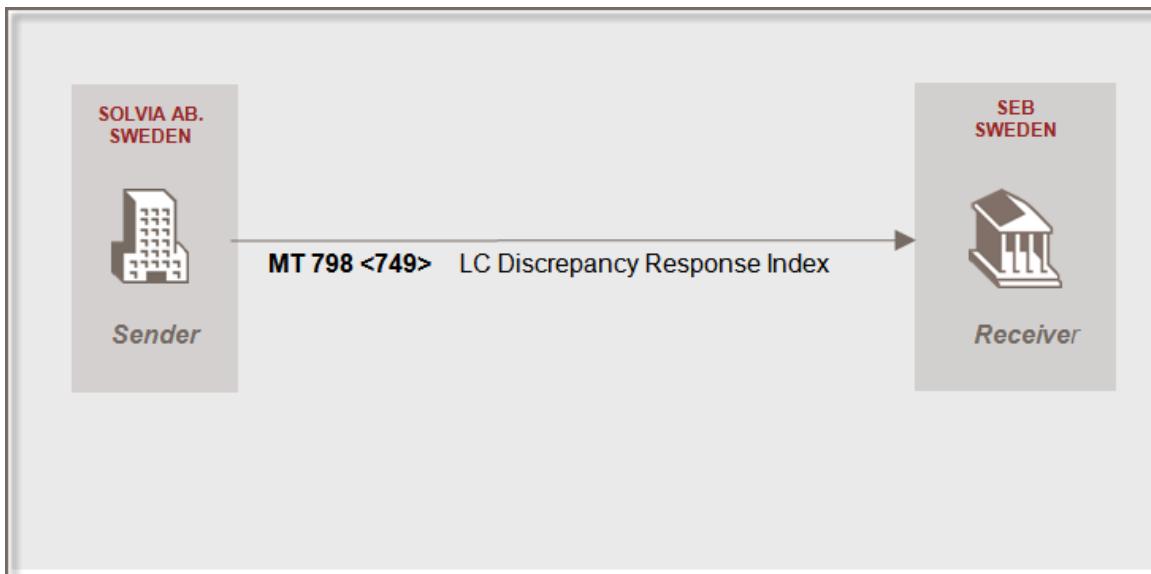
## Business Example 1

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

On the 25 May 2020 Solvia AB., Upsala, Sweden, an importer, responded to SEB and indicated that the discrepancies advised on the 24 May 2020 should be waived.

(To review the MT 798<748/750> discrepancy advice see the respective Example sections).

**Information Flow****SWIFT Messages**

SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 <749>	
Explanation	Format
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	SOLCORP3
Message Type	798
Receiver	ESSESESS
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:VAB7753-201025
Sub-message type	:12:749
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21A:FD9086-123 :21T:FD9086 :20:DC.IMP6555/6721 :21P:6555/6721-111 :21S:6555/6721 :31C:200317 :13E:202005250912 :31S:200524 :12D:AUTH

## 2.1.8 Notification of Advice of Payment/Acceptance/Negotiation

**Scope**

The Notification of Advice of Payment/Acceptance/Negotiation is sent to the corporate (applicant or beneficiary) by its bank and comprises one MT 798 message. They are used to notify (at the

time of the MT 754 message) the corporate that the documents were presented to the paying, accepting or negotiating bank in accordance with the credit terms and are being forwarded as instructed.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Notification of Advice of Payment/ Acceptance/ Negotiation must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 753 and enveloping one index message. This message contains data specific to the bank-to-corporate exchange and data from the MT 754.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

This message must be used for documentary credits and may also be used for standby LCs. It must not be used for guarantees.

## MT 798<753> - Notification of Advice of Payment/Acceptance/Negotiation Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;753&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;753&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 753.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <span style="color:red">[n*78z][n*145z]</span> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;753&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<753> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the corporate customer.
2.6	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.7	21R	Presentation Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the nominated/confirming bank to the documentary presentation.
2.8	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.9	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.

2.10	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.11	29B	Issuing Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the issuing bank.
2.12	58a	Nominated/Confirming Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the nominated/confirming bank, the bank with which the credit is available or is confirmed. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.13	29D	Nominated/Confirming Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the nominated/confirming bank.
2.14	35B	Principal Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and principal amount of the presentation (amount to be deducted from the outstanding amount of the documentary credit).
2.15	33B	Additional Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies any additional amount(s) as allowed for in the credit, for example, insurance. (requested at the time of the presentation)
2.16	32B	Credit Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the documentary credit.
2.17	31M	Maturity Date	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the full value of the credit is payable.
2.18	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.

2.19	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name, for ancillary documentation / information.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul>
2.20	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.21	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.22	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

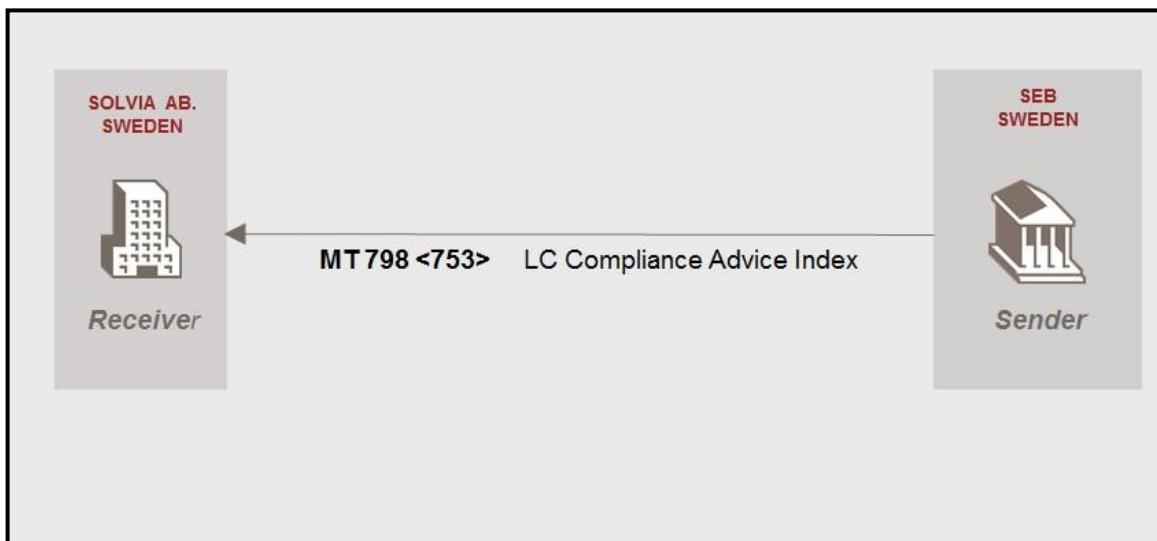
## Business Example 1

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

On 2 June 2020, Solvia AB., Upsala, Sweden, an importer, received notification from SEB that the documents, as presented by the beneficiary (Chang Electronics Group Inc) to the nominated bank (Bank of China), were in accordance with the credit terms and are being forwarded as instructed. Presentation amount was USD 28500,00.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;753&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y8968201
Sub-message type	:12:753
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21P:6555/6721-123 :21S:6555/6721 :20:DC.IMP6555/6721 :31C:200317 :13E:202006021114 :52A:GEBABEBB :58A:BKCHCNBJ :35B:USD28500, :31M:200607

## 2.1.9 Notification of Advice of Discharge

### Scope

The Notification of Advice of Discharge is sent to the corporate (applicant or beneficiary) by its bank and comprises two MT 798 messages. They are used to notify (with a copy of the MT 732 message) the corporate that the documents received with discrepancies have been taken up by the issuing bank.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Notification of Advice of Discharge must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 731 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 732 message, specific to the bank-to-corporate exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 732 and enveloping one MT 732 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 732 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Each MT 798 message for a single Notification of Advice of Discharge must be identified with the same Bank Reference Number. This number is specified in field 21P, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

This message must be used for documentary credits and may also be used for standby LCs. It must not be used for guarantees.

## MT 798<731> - Notification of Advice of Discharge Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;731&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;731&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 731.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;731&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<731> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/2.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	21R	Presentation Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the nominated/confirming bank to the documentary presentation.
2.6	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the corporate customer.
2.7	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.8	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.9	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.

2.10	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.11	29B	Issuing Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the issuing bank.
2.12	58a	Nominated/Confirming Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the nominated/confirming bank, the bank with which the credit is available or is confirmed. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.13	29D	Nominated/Confirming Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the nominated/confirming bank.
2.14	32B	Credit Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the documentary credit.
2.15	34D	Drawing Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the drawing for the documentary credit presentation, excluding any charges.
2.16	32G	Amount of Commission and Charges	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the commission and charges.
2.17	33a	Net Amount	<b>A</b> 6!n3!a15d (Date)(Currency)(Amount) <b>B</b> 3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the currency code and net amount that was or will be remitted or is to be claimed, and possibly a value date. GUID: for import side: Net Amount is Drawing Amount + Amount of Commission of Charges (Net amount is debited) For export side: Net Amount is Drawing Amount - Amount of Commission of Charges (Net amount is credited)
2.18	12R	Payment Terms	4!c (Code)	O	DEFN: The field specifies the payment terms applied for this presentation. CODES: SGHT = BY SIGHT PAYMENT ACCT = BY ACCEPTANCE DEFP = BY DEFERRED PAYMENT MIXD = BY MIXED PAYMENT NEGN = NEGOTIATION

2.19	12S	Payment Liability	4!c (Code)	O	DEFN: The field specifies the payment liability status. CODES: BPOB = PAYMENT WITH OBLIGATION TO PAY NOOB = PAYMENT WITHOUT OBLIGATION TO PAY GUID: The field is an indication by a nominated bank to the beneficiary as to whether, in acting as the nominated bank, it has agreed to honour or negotiate payment (BPOB it has agreed, NOOB it has not agreed). Refer also to UCP 600 Article 12a.
2.20	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.
2.21	78B	Instructions from the Bank	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates instructions or information from the bank. GUID: This field should only be used if 72Z has been used and there was not enough space in 72Z.
2.22	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name. CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel
2.23	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.24	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

2.25	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
------	-----	----------------------	-------------------------------------	---	--

## MT 798<732> - Notification of Advice of Discharge Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.  GUID: For MT 798<732> this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).  RULE: For MT 798<732> the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 732.
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.  RULE: For MT 798<732> the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 732]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<732> the message index number must have a fixed value of 2, e.g., 2/2. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 732 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 732 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 732 Message</b>		M	<b>MT 732</b> message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) <i>Fields listed here below for your convenience</i>
2.4	20	Sender's TRN	16x	M	DEFN: If the message is sent by the issuing bank, this field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank. If the message is sent by a bank other than the issuing bank, this field specifies either the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank or another reference assigned by the Sender.
2.5	21	Presenting Bank's Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference which has been assigned by the presenting bank, that is, the Receiver of this message.
2.6	30	Date of Advice of Payment/Acceptance/Negotiation	6!n	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date of the covering letter under which the documents were sent.
2.7	32B	Amount of Utilisation	3!a15d	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the drawing, excluding any charges or deductions.

2.8	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the Receiver.
-----	-----	--------------------------------	-------	---	---

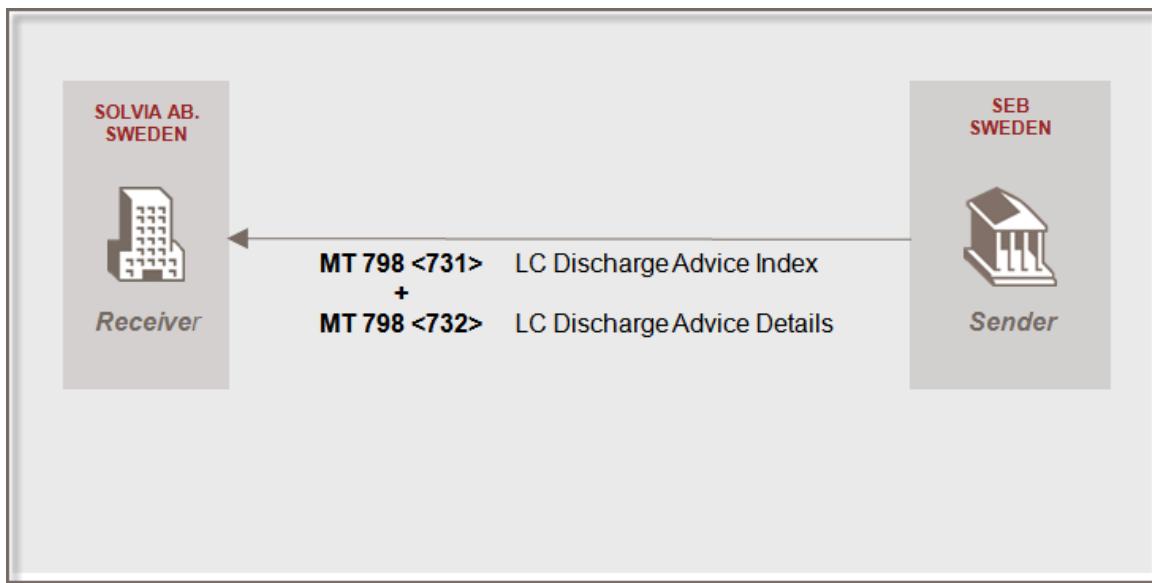
## Business Example 1

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

On 9 June 2020, Solvia AB., Uppsala, Sweden, an importer, received notification from their issuing bank, SEB, that the documents as received by SEB with discrepancies have been taken up by SEB.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;731&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y8970001
Sub-message type	:12:731
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21P:6555/6721-123 :21S:6555/6721 :20:DC.IMP6555/6721 :31C:200317 :13E:202006090945 :52A:GEBABEBB :58A:BKCHCNBJ :32B:USD32000, :34D:USD28500, :12R:DEFP :12S:BPOB

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;732&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y8970002
Sub-message type	:12:732
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:6555/6721-123 :20:12MN-T209 :21:DC.IMP6555/6721 :30:200317 :32B:USD28500,

## 2.1.10 Notification of Advice of Refusal

### Scope

The Notification of Advice of Refusal is sent to the corporate (applicant or beneficiary) by its bank and comprises two MT 798 messages. They are used to notify (with a copy of the MT 734 message) the corporate that the documents received with discrepancies have been refused by the issuing bank.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Notification of Advice of Refusal must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 733 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 734 message, specific to the bank-to-corporate exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 734 and enveloping one MT 734 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 734 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Each MT 798 message for a single Notification of Advice of Refusal must be identified with the same Bank Reference Number. This number is specified in field 21P, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

**MT 798<733> - Notification of Advice of Refusal Index**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;733&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;733&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 733.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;733&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<733> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/2.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the customer (applicant/beneficiary).
2.6	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.7	21R	Presentation Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the nominated/confirming bank to the documentary presentation.
2.8	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.9	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.
2.10	32B	Credit Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and original amount of the documentary credit.

2.11	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.12	29B	Issuing Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the issuing bank.
2.13	58a	Nominated/Confirming Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the nominated/confirming bank, the bank with which the credit is available or confirmed. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.14	29D	Nominated/Confirming Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the nominated/confirming bank.
2.15	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.
2.16	78B	Instructions from the Bank	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates instructions or information from the bank. GUID: This field should only be used if 72Z has been used and there was not enough space in 72Z.
2.17	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name. CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel
2.18	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

2.19	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.20	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

## MT 798<734> - Notification of Advice of Refusal Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message. GUID: For MT 798<734> this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension). RULE: For MT 798<734> the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 734.
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <u>[n*78z][n*145z]</u> ] (Text)	M	DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver. RULE: For MT 798<734> the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 734]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<734> the message index number must have a fixed value of 2, e.g., 2/2. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 734 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 734 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 734 Message</b>		M	<b>MT 734</b> message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) <i>Fields listed here below for your convenience</i>
2.4	20	Sender's TRN	16x	M	DEFN: If the message is sent by the issuing bank, this field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank. If the message is sent by a bank other than the issuing bank, this field specifies either the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank or another reference assigned by the Sender.
2.5	21	Presenting Bank's Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference which has been assigned by the presenting bank from which the documents have been received.
2.6	32A	Date and Amount of Utilisation	6!n3!a15d	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date of the covering letter under which the documents were sent, followed by the currency code and amount of the drawing.
2.7	73A	Charges Claimed	6*35z	O	DEFN: This field specifies the charges claimed by the Sender, if any.

2.8	33a	Total Amount Claimed	A 6!n3!a15d (Date)(Currency)(Amount) B 3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount claimed, including charges, by the Sender of the message.
2.9	57a	Account with Bank	A [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)  B [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) [35x] (Location)  D [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the financial institution at which the amount claimed is to be remitted in favour of the Sender.
2.10	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the Receiver.
2.11	77J	Discrepancies	70*50z (Narrative) Line 1 /8a/[add'l information] (Code)(Narrative) Lines 2-70 [/add'l information] (Narrative) or /8a/[add'l information] (Code)(Narrative)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reason(s) for refusal of the document(s), for example, discrepancies. It may contain any type of instruction or information.
2.12	77B	Disposal of Documents	3*35x (Narrative) In addition to narrative text, the following line formats may be used: Line 1 /8c/[additional information] (Code)(Narrative) Lines 2-3 [/continuation of additional information] (Narrative)	M	DEFN: This field contains information regarding the disposal of the documents.  One of the following codes may be used in Code: HOLD Documents held pending further instructions from the presenter NOTIFY Documents held until the issuing bank receives a waiver from the applicant and agrees to accept it, or receives further instructions from the presenter prior to agreeing to accept a waiver PREVINST Acting in accordance with instructions previously received from the presenter RETURN Documents being returned to you

## MT 734 Network Validated Rules

C1 If field 73A is present, field 33a must also be present (Error code(s): C17).

C2 The currency code in the amount fields 32A and 33a must be the same (Error code(s): C02).

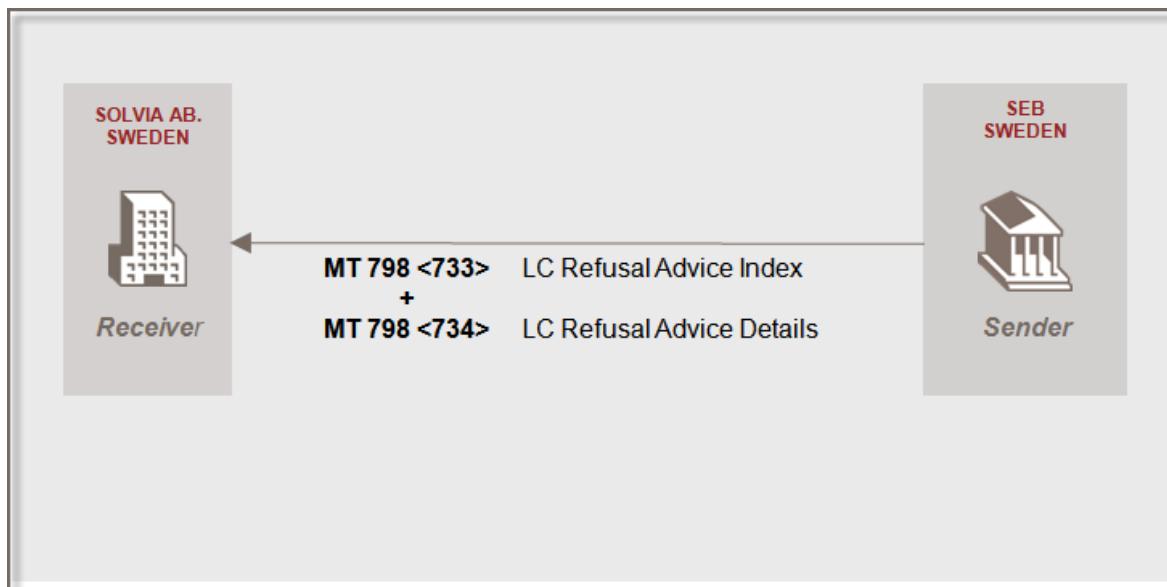
## Business Example 1

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

On 9 June 2020, Solvia AB., Uppsala, Sweden, an importer, received notification from their issuing bank, SEB, that the documents as received by SEB with discrepancies have been refused by the issuing SEB.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;733&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y8970022
Sub-message type	:12:733
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21P:6555/6722-123 :21S:6555/6721 :20:DC.IMP6555/6722 :31C:200224 :13E:202006090947 :32B:USD123675, :52A:GEBABEBB :58A:BKCHCNBJ

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;734&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y8970023
Sub-message type	:12:734
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:6555/6722-123 :20:12MN-T222 :21:DC.IMP6555/6722 :32A:200921USD123675, :73A:YOUR CHARGES USD150, SWIFT USD20, INTEREST USD10, :33A:200927USD123798, :77J:PARTSHIPMENT EFFECTED DECLARATION THAT VESSEL IS RUNNING IN REGULAR LINE SERVICE NOT PRESENTED :77B:/HOLD/

## 2.1.11 Notification of Advice of Reimbursement or Payment

### Scope

The Notification of Advice of Reimbursement or Payment is sent to the corporate (applicant or beneficiary) by its bank and comprises one MT 798 message. They are used to notify (at the time of the MT 756 message, if sent or received) the corporate about reimbursement or payment, for a drawing under a documentary credit for which no specific reimbursement instructions or payment provisions were provided.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Notification of Advice of Reimbursement or Payment must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 755 and enveloping one index message. This message contains data specific to the bank-to-corporate exchange and data from the MT 756.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

This message must be used for documentary credits and may also be used for standby LCs. It must not be used for guarantees.

## MT 798<755> - Notification of Advice of Reimbursement or Payment Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;755&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;755&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 755.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	<p>73z (Text)  <span style="color:red">[n*78z][n*145z]</span>  <span style="color:red">1 (Text)</span></p>	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;755&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<755> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the customer.
2.6	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.7	21R	Presentation Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the nominated/confirming bank to the documentary presentation.
2.8	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.9	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.

2.10	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.11	29B	Issuing Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the issuing bank.
2.12	58a	Nominated/Confirming Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the nominated/confirming bank, the bank with which the credit is available or is confirmed. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.13	29D	Nominated/Confirming Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the nominated/confirming bank.
2.14	35B	Principal Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and principal amount of the presentation (amount to be deducted from the outstanding amount of the documentary credit).
2.15	33B	Additional Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies any additional amount(s) as allowed for in the credit, for example, insurance. (requested at the time of the presentation)
2.16	32G	Amount of Commission and Charges	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the commission and charges.
2.17	33A	Net Amount	6!n3!a15d (Date)(Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the value date, the currency code and net amount that was or will be remitted or is to be claimed. GUID: for import side: Net Amount is Principal Amount + Additional Amounts + Amount of Commission of Charges (Net amount is debited) For export side: Net Amount is Principal Amount + Additional Amounts - Amount of Commission of Charges (Net amount is credited)

2.18	71E	Details of Commission and Charges	100*35z (Narrative) or /8a/1!a/[3!a13d][Narrative] (Type)(Bank)(Currency) (Amount)(Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the details of commission and charges in free text or coded form.</p> <p><b>CODES for Type:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACCPCTCOM = Acceptance commission</li> <li>ADVCOM = Advising commission</li> <li>AMNDCOM = Amendment commission</li> <li>CMTCOM = Commitment commission</li> <li>COMM = Commission</li> <li>CONFCOM = Confirmation commission</li> <li>CORCOM = Correspondent's commission</li> <li>COUR = Courier charges</li> <li>DEFCOM = Deferred payment commission</li> <li>DSCRPCOM = Discrepancies fee</li> <li>FORFAIT = Forfaiting charges</li> <li>HANDLCOM = Handling commission</li> <li>INTEREST = Interest</li> <li>INSUR = Insurance premium</li> <li>MISC = Other charges</li> <li>NEGCOM = Negotiation commission</li> <li>NOTFCOM = Notification commission</li> <li>OBSER = Observation charges</li> <li>PAYCOM = Payment commission</li> <li>POST = Postage</li> <li>PREADCOM = Pre-advice commission</li> <li>PURCH = Negotiation charges</li> <li>REMB = Reimbursement charges</li> <li>SWIFT = SWIFT charges</li> <li>TELECHAR = Teletransmission charges</li> <li>TRANSCOM = Transfer charges</li> <li>TAX = Tax</li> </ul> <p><b>CODES for Bank:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>B= charged by the bank sending the message</li> <li>O= charged by another bank than the bank sending the message</li> </ul> <p>GUID: Narrative can be continued on next line with // at beginning of continuation line.</p> <p>GUID: same code can be repeated on several lines.</p> <p>GUID: taxes on charges or commissions can be reported on a TAX line, indicating the percentage tax and base amount in Narrative.</p>
------	-----	-----------------------------------	--	---	---

2.19	32B	Credit Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the documentary credit.
2.20	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.
2.21	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name, for ancillary documentation / information.  CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel
2.22	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer  CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.23	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.24	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

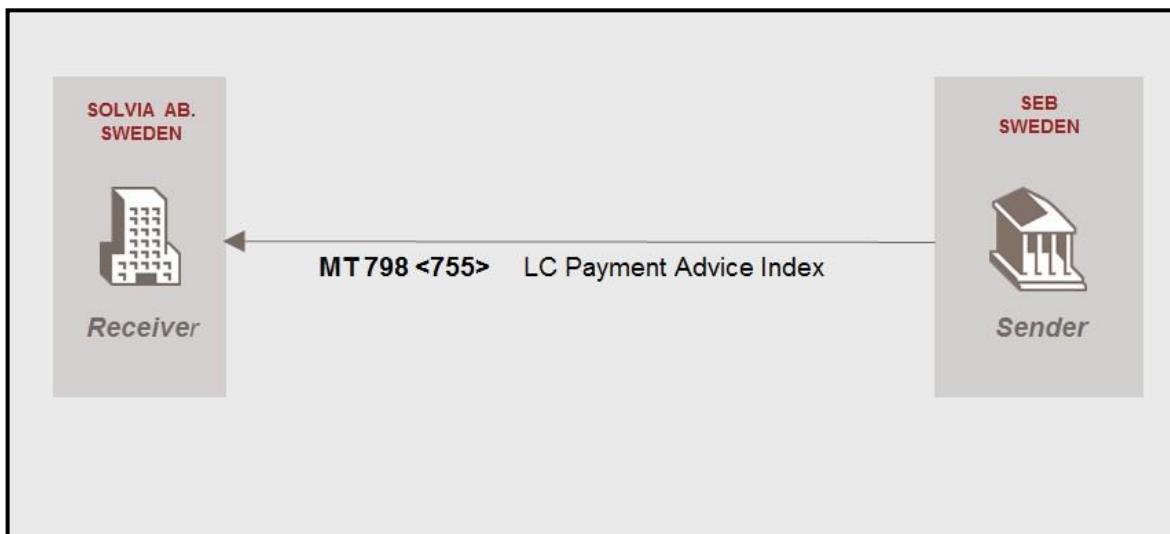
## Business Example 1

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

On 15 June 2020, Solvia AB., Upsala, Sweden, an importer, received notification from their issuing bank, SEB, that the full reimbursement will be credited by SEB to the nominated bank, Bank of China, for payment of the documentary credit plus charges.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;755&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y8970108
Sub-message type	:12:755
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21P:6555/6722-123 :21S:6555/6722 :20:DC.IMP6555/6800 :31C:200228 :13E:202006151754 :52A:GEBABEBB :58A:BKCHCNBJ :35B:USD123675, :32G:USD675, :33A:200617USD123000,

## 2.1.12 Settlement of Import Documentary Credit

### Scope

The Settlement of Import Documentary Credit is sent to the corporate (applicant) by its bank and comprises one MT 798 message. It is used to report the settlement of payment and/or charges on the applicant's side by the issuing bank.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Settlement of Import Documentary Credit must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 757 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for corporate-to-bank exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

## MT 798<757> - Settlement of Import Documentary Credit Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;757&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;757&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 757.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;757&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<757> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the customer.
2.6	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.7	21R	Presentation Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the nominated/confirming bank to the documentary presentation.
2.8	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.9	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.
2.10	52a	Issuing Bank	A [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) D [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.

2.11	29B	Issuing Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the issuing bank.
2.12	58a	Nominated/Confirming Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the nominated/confirming bank, the bank with which the credit is available or is confirmed.  RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.13	12R	Reason for Message	4!c (Code)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reason for the message.  CODES: PAYM = ADVICE OF PAYMENT CHGS = ADVICE OF COMMISSIONS/CHARGES BOTH = ADVICE OF PAYMENT AND COMMISSIONS/CHARGES
2.14	31S	Date of Presentation	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank received the documents.
2.15	32B	Documentary Credit Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the documentary credit.
2.16	34D	Drawing Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the drawing for the documentary credit presentation, excluding any charges.  RULE: Mandatory if field 12R is PAYM or BOTH
2.17	32G	Amount of Commission and Charges	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the commission and charges.
2.18	33a	Net Amount	<b>A</b> 6!n3!a15d (Date)(Currency)(Amount) <b>B</b> 3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the currency code and net amount that was or will be claimed, and possibly a value date.  GUID: For import side: Net Amount is Drawing Amount (+ Additional Amounts) + Amount of Commission of Charges

2.19	71E	Details of Commission and Charges	100*35z (Narrative) or /8a/1!a/[3!a13d][Narrative] (Type)(Bank)(Currency) (Amount)(Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the details of commission and charges in free text or coded form.</p> <p><b>CODES for Type:</b></p> <p>ACCPCTCOM = Acceptance commission      ADVCOM = Advising commission      AMNDCOM = Amendment commission      CMTCOM = Commitment commission      COMM = Commission      CONFCOM = Confirmation commission      CORCOM = Correspondent's commission      COUR = Courier charges      DEFCOM = Deferred payment commission      DSCRPCOM = Discrepancies fee      FORFAIT = Forfaiting charges      HANDLCOM = Handling commission      INTEREST = Interest      INSUR = Insurance premium      ISSCOM = Issuing commission      MISC = Other charges      NEGCOM = Negotiation commission      NOTFCOM = Notification commission      OBSER = Observation charges      PAYCOM = Payment commission      POST = Postage      PREADCOM = Pre-advice commission      PURCH = Negotiation charges      REMB = Reimbursement charges      SWIFT = SWIFT charges      TELECHAR = Teletransmission charges      TRANSCOM = Transfer charges      TAX = Tax</p> <p><b>CODES for Bank:</b></p> <p>B= charged by the bank sending the message      O= charged by another bank than the bank sending the message</p> <p>GUID: Narrative can be continued on next line with // at beginning of continuation line.</p> <p>GUID: same code can be repeated on several lines.</p> <p>GUID: taxes on charges or commissions can be reported on a TAX line, indicating the percentage tax and base amount in Narrative.</p>
------	-----	-----------------------------------	--	---	--

2.20	57a	Account With Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>B</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) [35x] (Location) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the financial institution at which the amount claimed is to be settled.  GUID: This field will only be used if the settlement account (applicant account) is not held with the issuing bank, in this case the issuing bank will “directly debit” the account of the applicant held with the bank mentioned in this field.
2.21	53C	Settlement Account	/34x (Account)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the account number for the settlement and/or any commissions and charges (in the case where the field 25A, Alternative Charges Account, is not present).
2.22	34V	Total Amount For Settlement Account	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the currency and the total amount that is debited to the settlement account.
2.23	25A	Alternative Charges Account	/34x (Account)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the account number for the settlement of commissions and charges, if different from field 53C (Settlement Account).
2.24	34W	Total Amount For Alternative Charges Account	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the currency and the total amount that is debited to the alternative charges account.
2.25	36	Exchange Rate	12d	O	DEFN: This field specifies the exchange rate used to convert a foreign currency.
2.26	34X	Countervalue in Local Currency	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the countervalue of the converted foreign currency in local currency.
2.27	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.
2.28	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name, for ancillary documentation / information.  CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel

2.29	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer  CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.30	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.31	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

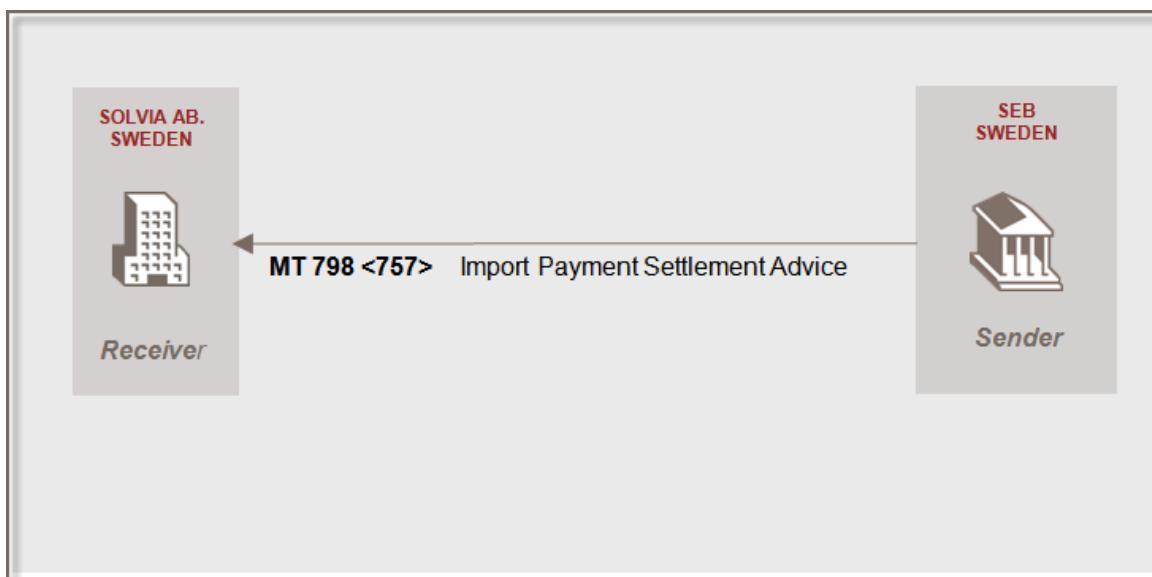
## Business Example 1

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

On 16 June 2020 Solvia AB., Upsala Sweden, an importer, received an advice of payment with respect to a documentary credit issued by SEB: This advice included all charges connected with the credit.

- Documentary credit issued is numbered DC.IMP6555/6344
- The issue date of the credit is 16 March 2020.
- The credit amount is for USD 32000.00, of which USD 28500.00 drawn down by the beneficiary
- SEB levied charges of USD \$240.00:
  - Issuing commission USD 160.00 (0.50%)
  - Amendment commission USD \$40.00 (1 amendment)
  - SWIFT USD \$40.00 (original + amendment)

**Information Flow****SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;757&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:VAB7753-201024
Sub-message type	:12:757
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21P:6555/6344-123 :21S:6555/6344 :20:DC.IMP6555/6344 :31C:200316 :13E:202006161308 :12R:BOTH :31S:200723 :32B:USD32000, :34D:USD28500, :32G:USD240, :33B:USD28740, :71E:/ISSCOM/B/USD160, /AMND COM/B/USD40, /SWIFT/B/USD40, :53C:/1091282 :34V:USD28740,

## 2.2 Export Documentary Credit Transactions

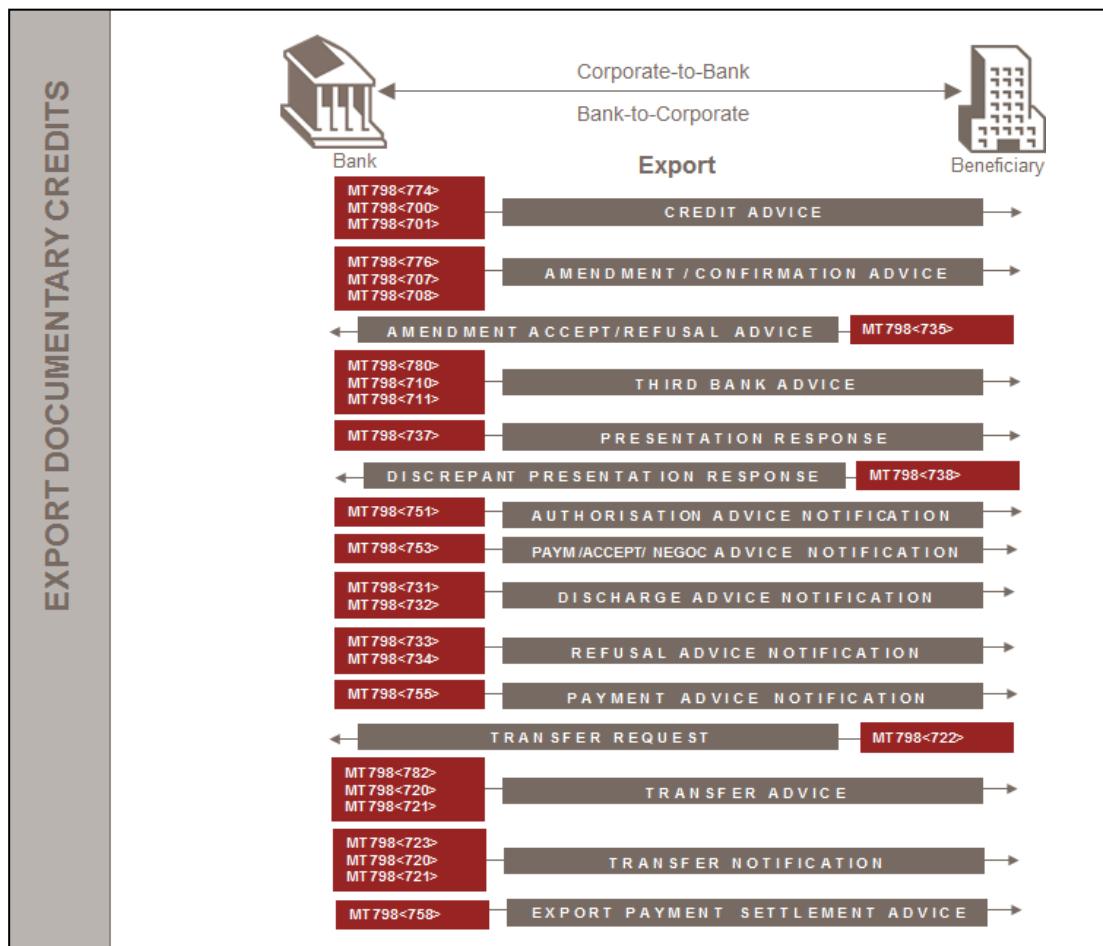
This section covers the documentary credit transactions applicable to corporate entities involved on the export side of the trade process, specifically fifteen transaction flows:

- Advice of Documentary Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Advice of Amendment or Confirmation of Documentary Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Advice of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment – Corporate-to-Bank
- Advice of Third Bank Documentary Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Response to Documentary Credit presentation – Bank-to-Corporate
- Response to Advice of Discrepant presentation – Corporate-to-Bank
- Notification of Authorisation to Pay, Accept or Negotiate – Bank-to-Corporate
- Notification of Advice of Payment/Acceptance/Negotiation – Bank-to-Corporate
- Notification of Advice of Discharge – Bank-to-Corporate
- Notification of Advice of Refusal – Bank-to-Corporate
- Notification of Advice of Reimbursement or Payment – Bank-to-Corporate
- Request for Transfer of a Documentary Credit – Corporate-to-Bank
- Advice of Transfer of a Documentary Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Notification of Transfer of a Documentary Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Settlement of Export Documentary Credit – Bank-to-Corporate

The *SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit* serves as the main document describing the standards. For more information, see this handbook. In addition, the following implementation conventions apply:

- There are no network validated rules for the MT 798, nor the enveloped message within the MT 798. In implementation, the network validated rules as specified in the latest SWIFT User Handbook for the enveloped message (e.g., MT 700 - Issue of a Documentary Credit) should be adhered to, unless otherwise stated in this section of the guide,
- Both the usage rules and usage guidelines as specified in the latest SWIFT User Handbook for the enveloped message should be adhered to, unless otherwise stated in this section of the guide.

The following diagram depicts the export transaction flows:



The following table indicates the composition of the individual transaction flows:

<b>Export Documentary Credit</b>					
<b>MT Message Type</b>	<b>Sub- Message Type</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Max. Occur</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Base Message Type</b>
<b>Advice of Documentary Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	774	M	1	LC Advice Index	
MT 798	700	M	1	LC Advice Details	MT 700
MT 798	701	O	7	LC Advice Extension	MT 701
<b>Advice of amendment or confirmation of Documentary Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	776	M	1	LC Amendment Advice Index	
MT 798	707	O	1	LC Amendment Advice Details	MT 707
MT 798	708	O	7	LC Amendment Advice Extension	MT 708
<b>Advice of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment – C2B</b>					
MT 798	735	M	1	LC Amendment Acceptance Advice Index	
<b>Advice of Third Bank Documentary Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	780	M	1	LC Third Bank Advice Index	
MT 798	710	M	1	LC Third Bank Advice Details	MT 710
MT 798	711	O	7	LC Third Bank Advice Extension	MT 711
<b>Response to Documentary Credit presentation – B2C</b>					
MT 798	737	M	1	LC Presentation Response Index	
<b>Response to Advice of Discrepant Presentation – C2B</b>					
MT 798	738	M	1	LC Discrepant Presentation Response Index	
<b>Notification of Authorisation to Pay, Accept or Negotiate – B2C</b>					
MT 798	751	M	1	LC Authorisation Index	
<b>Notification of Advice of Payment/Acceptance/Negotiation – B2C</b>					
MT 798	753	M	1	LC Compliance Advice Index	
<b>Notification of Advice of Discharge – B2C</b>					
MT 798	731	M	1	LC Discharge Advice Index	
MT 798	732	M	1	LC Discharge Advice Details	MT 732
<b>Notification of Advice of Refusal – B2C</b>					
MT 798	733	M	1	LC Refusal Advice Index	
MT 798	734	M	1	LC Refusal Advice Details	MT 734
<b>Notification of Advice of Reimbursement or Payment – B2C</b>					
MT 798	755	M	1	LC Payment Advice Index	
<b>Request for Transfer of a Documentary Credit – C2B</b>					
MT 798	722	M	1	LC Transfer Request Index	
<b>Advice of Transfer of a Documentary Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	782	M	1	LC Transfer Advice Index	
MT 798	720	M	1	LC Transfer Advice Details	MT 720

MT 798	721	O	7	LC Transfer Advice Extension	MT 721
<b>Notification of Transfer of a Documentary Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	723	M	1	LC Transfer Notification Index	
MT 798	720	O	1	LC Transfer Advice Details	MT 720
MT 798	721	O	7	LC Transfer Advice Extension	MT 721
<b>Settlement of Export Documentary Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	758	M	1	LC Export Settlement Index	

The following legend applies for the above table and the subsequent format and field specifications. The full rules for the notation of components inside messages and fields can be found in the SWIFT User Handbook.

<b>Legend</b>		
<b>Status</b>	M	Mandatory
	O	Optional
<b>Usage Details</b>	DEFN	Definition
	RULE	Usage Rule. Must be adhered to
	GUID	Usage Guidance. Recommended practice
	CODE	Applicable Code Values
	NOTE	Remark
<b>Format</b>	a	alphabetic, capital letters (A through Z), upper case only
	c	alpha-numeric capital letters (upper case), and digits only
	n	numeric, digits (0 through 9) only
	x	SWIFT X set: • A to Z • a to z • 0 to 9 / - ? : ( ) . , ' + SPACE CrLf
	z	SWIFT Z set: • A to Z • a to z • 0 to 9 / - ? : ( ) . , ' + SPACE CrLf = ! " % & * < > ; @ # _ {
	!	fixed length
	d	decimals, including decimal comma ',' preceding the fractional part. The fractional part may be missing, but the decimal comma must always be present
<b>Codes</b>	I	or

## 2.2.1 Advice of Documentary Credit

### Scope

The LC Advice of Documentary Credit is sent to the corporate (beneficiary) by its bank and comprises a series of MT 798 messages. Collectively these messages are used to advise the issuance of a documentary credit, the related terms, and conditions under which the credit has been issued and, if any, the confirmation of the credit.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one advice must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 774 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 700 message, specific to the bank-to-corporate exchange.
- In addition, a MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 700 and enveloping one MT 700 message must be included. The existing bank-to-bank MT 700 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable bank-to corporate implementation.
- In addition, up to a maximum of seven MT 798 messages may optionally be included, each identified with a sub-message type of 701 and enveloping one MT 701 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 701 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document.

An advising bank, at its discretion, may delete bank-to-bank specific data from the MT 700 prior to advising it to the beneficiary.

Each MT 798 message for a single advice must be identified with the same Advising Bank Reference Number and this must be specified in field 21P, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters. In instances where the source MT 700 or MT 701 exceeds 9,800 characters, fields 45A (Description of Goods and/or Services), 46A (Documents Required), or 47A (Additional Conditions) should be redistributed across further MT 701s such that any single instance of a MT 700 or MT 701 does not then exceed the limit of 9,800 characters. Please also note that some fields of the interbank messages should not be forwarded in MT 798 to the corporate, so this will reduce its size.

**MT 798<774> - LC Advice Index**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;774&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;774&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 774.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;774&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<774> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/3, or 1/4 or 1/5 depending on the number of 701s.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the advising bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.5	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number which has been assigned by the issuing bank.
2.6	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.7	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued. GUID: MT 798<774> This date must be the same as in the MT 700.
2.8	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)  <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the bank which issued the documentary credit. RULE: For MT 798<774>, when specified, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the issuing bank.

2.9	58a	Advising Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the bank which is advising the documentary credit.  RULE: For MT 798<774>, when specified, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the advising bank.
2.10	29B	Advising Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the advising bank.
2.11	49D	Confirmation Indicator	7!x (Instruction)	M	DEFN: This field indicates whether documentary credit has been confirmed.  CODES: CONFIRM = Confirmed WITHOUT = Without confirmation  GUID: This value should correspond to field 49 in the MT 798< 700>, unless this field has the value of "MAY ADD", in which case the advising bank would indicate "CONFIRM" or "WITHOUT" in field 49D, as the case may be,  GUID: Information concerning a silent confirmation should be entered in field 49F, field 49D is not intended for this purpose,
2.12	49F	Confirmation Information	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: Additional information concerning confirmation of the documentary credit advice.
2.13	49Y	Charges Information	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: Additional information concerning billing.
2.14	47E	Information from Advising Bank	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: Additional information from the advising bank related to the documentary credit advice.

2.15	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.16	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.17	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.18	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

**MT 798<700> - LC Advice Details**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;700&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;700&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 700.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;700&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 700]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 700 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the advising bank. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 700 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 700 Message</b>		M	MT 700 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)

## MT 798<701> - LC Advice Extension

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;701&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;701&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 701.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;701&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 701]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 701 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the advising bank. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 701 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 701 Message</b>		M	MT 701 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) NOTE: A maximum of seven MT 798<701>s are permitted.

## Business Example 1

Please note that for the following examples, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

ABC Company, Kaerntnerstrasse 3, Vienna, imports beer from Amdam Company, PO Box 123, Amsterdam, under a documentary credit.

ABC Co.'s bank is RZB, Vienna. Amdam Co.'s bank is ING BANK, Rotterdam.

In addition to the above information, the documentary credit application is comprised of the following:

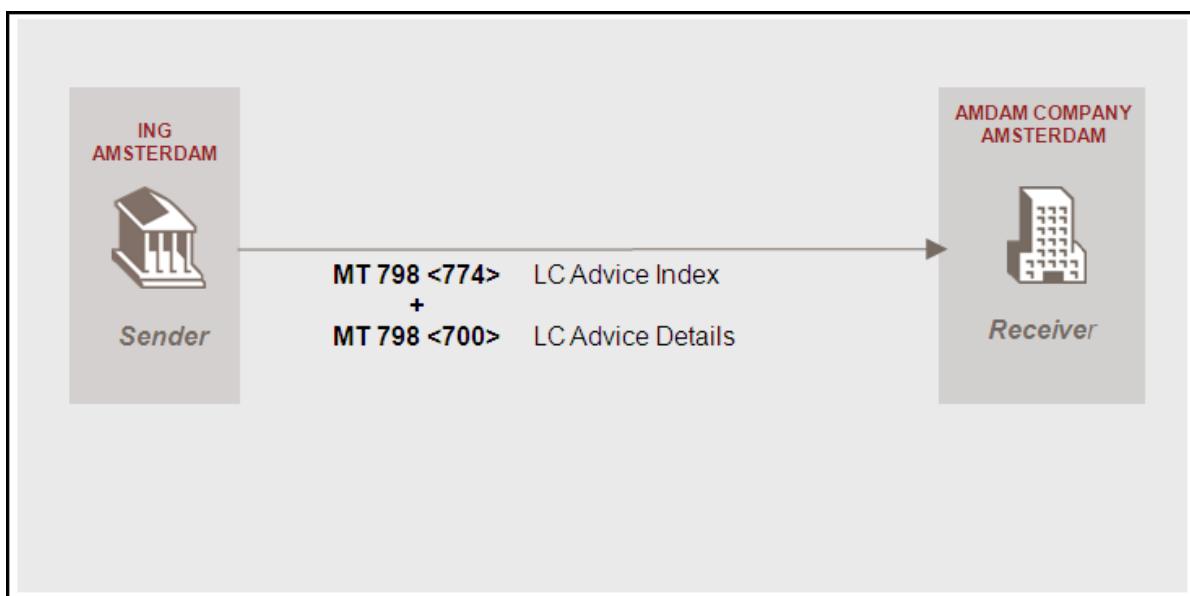
Type of Credit:	IRREVOCABLE
Documentary Credit Application Number:	7890123
Issuing Bank:	ANZ Bank Melbourne, Australia
Expiry Date:	30-Jul-20
Place of Expiry:	Amsterdam
Amount:	Euro 100,000
Debit Account	1234567891
Advising Bank:	ING Bank Amsterdam
Available With:	Advising Bank By sight payment
Shipment:	400,000 Bottles of beer Packed 12 to an export carton FCA Amsterdam
Against presentation of the following documents through the Advising Bank:	Signed Commercial Invoice in Quintuplicate Forwarding Agent's Certificate of Receipt, showing goods addressed to Applicant.

Documents are to be presented within 6 days after the date of issuance of the Forwarding Agent's Certificate of Receipt (FCR).

Confirmation is requested.

Taking in charge at Amsterdam for transportation to Vienna.

Transhipment and partial shipments are permitted.

**Information Flow****SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;774&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	INGBNL2A
Message Type	798
Receiver	AMDCORP3
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:G9975-98761
Sub-message type	:12:774
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21P:ASD88703-123 :21P:ASD88703 :20:DC123456 :13E:202001151218 :31C:200517 :52A:ANZBNK8M :58A:INGBNL2A :29B:ING BANK MERSTER STRAAT PH 788 677 678 :49D:CONFIRM :47E:+PLEASE PRESENT DOCUMENTS AT ROTTERDAM NORTH BRANCH +MERSTER STRAAT

<b>SWIFT Message - 2 MT 798 &lt;700&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	INGBNL2A
Message Type	798
Receiver	AMDCORP3
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:G9975-98762
Sub-message type	:12: <b>700</b>
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:ASD88703-123 :27:1/1 :40A:IRREVOCABLE :20:DC123456 :23:PREADDV/030510 :31C:200517 :40E:UCP LATEST VERSION :31D:200730AMSTERDAM :50:ABC COMPANY KAERNTNERSTRASSE 3 VIENNA :59:AMDAM COMPANY PO BOX 123 AMSTERDAM :32B:EUR100000, :41A:BACOARBA BY PAYMENT :43P:ALLOWED :43T:ALLOWED :44A:AMSTERDAM :44B:VIENNA :45A:+400,000 BOTTLES OF BEER PACKED 12 TO AN EXPORT CARTON +FCA AMSTERDAM :46A:+SIGNED COMMERCIAL INVOICE IN QUINTUPPLICATE + FORWARDING AGENTS CERTIFICATE OF RECEIPT SHOWING GOODS ADDRESSED TO THE APPLICANT :48:6/FCR :49:CONFIRM

## 2.2.2 Advice of Amendment or Confirmation of Documentary Credit

### Scope

The LC Advice of Amendment of Documentary Credit is sent to the corporate (beneficiary) by its bank and comprises one or more MT 798 messages. Collectively these messages are used to advise amendments to an issued documentary credit or singularly as a MT 798<776> to advise confirmation after the documentary credit has been advised.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one advice must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 776 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 707 message, specific to the bank-to-corporate exchange.
- An additional MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 707 and enveloping one MT 707 message may be included. The existing bank-to-bank MT 707 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable bank-to corporate implementation.
- In addition, up to a maximum of seven MT 798 message may optionally be included, each identified with a sub-message type of 708 and enveloping one MT 708 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 708 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document.

Each MT 798 message for a single amendment advice must be identified with the same Advising Bank Reference Number and this must be specified in field 21P, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

**MT 798<776> - LC Amendment Index**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;776&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;776&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 776.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;776&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<776> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/3.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the advising bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number which has been assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.6	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued. GUID: MT 798<776> This date must be the same as in the MT 700.
2.7	52a	Issuing Bank	A [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)  D [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the bank which issued the amendment. RULE: For MT 798<776>, when specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the issuing bank.

2.8	58a	Advising Bank	A [/1:a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) D [/1:a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the bank which is advising the amendment advice.  RULE: For MT 798<776>, when specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the advising bank.
2.9	29B	Advising Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the advising bank.
2.10	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the beneficiary to the documentary credit.
2.11	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.12	49D	Confirmation Indicator	7!x (Instruction)	O	DEFN: This field indicates whether amendment advice has been confirmed.  CODES: CONFIRM   WITHOUT.  GUID: If used, this value should correspond to field 49 in the original credit (MT 700), unless this field has the value of "MAY ADD", in which case the advising bank may indicate "CONFIRM" or "WITHOUT" in field 49D, as the case may be,  GUID: this field should only be used if there is a change in confirmation (for example, the credit was previously not confirmed, and now is confirmed).  GUID: Information concerning a silent confirmation should be entered in field 49F, field 49D is not intended for this purpose,
2.13	49F	Confirmation Information	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: Additional information concerning confirmation of the amendment advice.
2.14	49Y	Charges Information	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: Additional information concerning bank charges.
2.15	47E	Information from Advising Bank	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: Additional information from the advising bank related to the amendment advice.

2.16	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.17	26E	Number of Amendment	3n (Number)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the number which identifies this amendment.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;776&gt;, this field is only used when MT 798&lt;776&gt; is accompanied by a MT 798&lt;707&gt;. The this number must be the same as field 26E in the accompanying MT 798&lt;707&gt;</p>
2.18	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.19	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.20	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<707> - LC Amendment Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;707&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;707&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 707.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;707&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 707]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 707 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the advising bank RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 707 Message</b>		M	MT 707 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)

## MT 798<708> - LC Amendment Extension

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;708&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;708&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 708.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;708&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 708]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 708 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the advising bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 708 Message</b>		M	MT 708 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) NOTE: A maximum of seven MT 798<708>s are permitted.

## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the amendment requested.

### Narrative

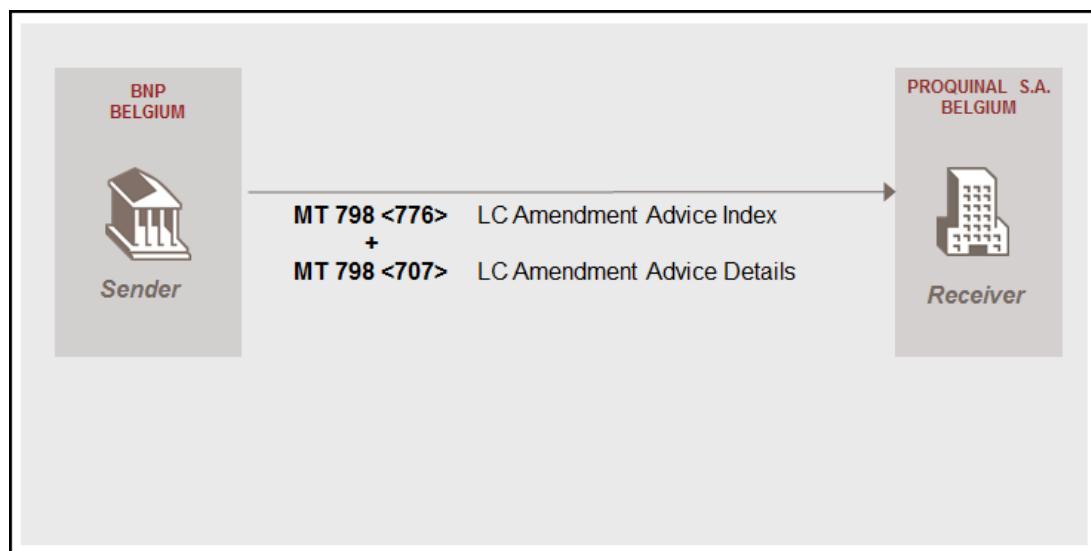
Solvia AB., Uppsala, Sweden an importer, requests an amendment of a documentary credit issued by SEB. The following changes are requested to the terms and conditions of the documentary credit issued DC.IMP 3410/3444:

- The expiry date of the credit has been extended to 30 September 2020.
- The amount of the credit has been increased by USD 3,250 to USD 34,750.
- The bill of lading is to be issued not later than 20 September 2020.

Beneficiary is PROQUINAL S.A. Rue de la Bourse, Brussels

The beneficiary's bank, BNP, advises the documentary credit amendment to the beneficiary, Proquinal S.A..

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;776&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	GEBABEBB
Message Type	798
Receiver	PROQBEBB
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y8967851
Sub-message type	:12:776
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21P:DC 3410/3444-12 :21S:DC 3410/3444 :20:DC 3410/3444 :13E:202001151218 :31C:200521 :52A:ESSESESS :58A:GEBABEBB

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;707&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	GEBABEBB
Message Type	798
Receiver	PROQBEBB
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:Y8967852
Sub-message type	:12:707
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:DC 3410/3444-12 :27:1/1 :20:DC.IMP 3410/3444 :21:NONREF :23:DC.IMP 3410/3444 :31C:200521 :26E:01 :30:200621 :22A:ADVI :32B:USD3250, :46B:/ADD/BILLS OF LADING TO BE ISSUED NOT LATER THAN 20 SEPTEMBER 2020

## 2.2.3      **Advice of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment**

### Scope

The Advice of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment is sent by the corporate (beneficiary) to its bank and comprises one MT 798 message. It is used to advise the bank that the amendment has been either accepted or refused.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Advice of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 735 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for corporate-to-bank exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

## MT 798<735> - Advice of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;735&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;735&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 735.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;735&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<735> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the corporate customer. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the related reference number which has been assigned by the advising bank.
2.6	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.7	30	Date of Amendment	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the credit as being amended.
2.8	26E	Number of Amendment	3n (Number)	M	This field specifies the number which identifies this amendment.
2.9	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.

2.10	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.11	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.12	12D	Acceptance Instructions	4!c (Code)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the Beneficiary's response to a documentary credit amendment. CODES: REFU = REFUSED (Not accepted) ACCP = ACCEPTED
2.13	29A	Customer Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the corporate.
2.14	72Z	Corporate to Bank Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the bank.
2.15	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field type of channel for the claim presentation and where appropriate, any associated file name. CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) ORIG = Original presentation (this MT 798<735> represents the complete advice, no other documentation to accompany or follow this message) OTHR = Other delivery channel GUID: Any code in this field, other than ORIG, should be considered as an incomplete advice from the beneficiary.

2.16	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.17	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.18	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## Business Example 1

Please note that for the following examples, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

ABC Company, Kaerntnerstrasse 3, Vienna, imports beer from Amdam Company, PO Box 123, Amsterdam, under a documentary credit.

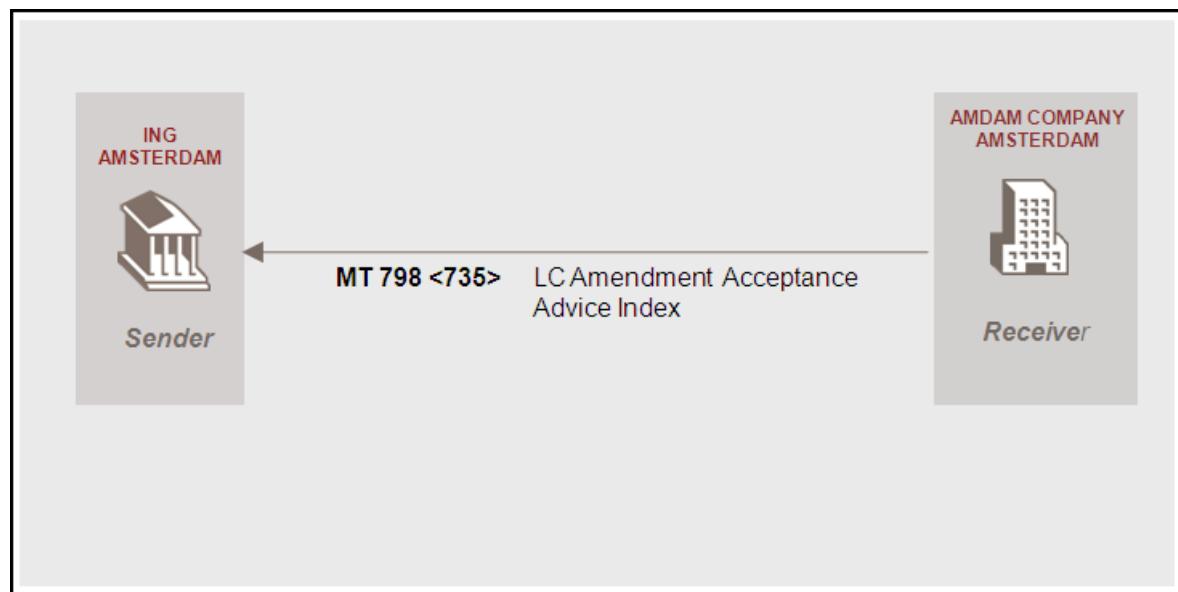
Amdam Co.'s bank is ING BANK, Rotterdam.

Amdam Co. receives advice of an amendment to the documentary credit and following review, responds with an acceptance of the amendment requested by ABC Company.

In addition to the above information, the documentary credit application is comprised of the following:

Documentary Credit Number:	DC123456
Issuing Bank:	ANZ Bank Melbourne, Australia
Expiry Date:	30-Jul-20
Number of Amendment:	6
Advising Bank:	ING BANK Amsterdam
Acceptance Instruction	ABC Company accepts the referenced amendment
Customer Contact	Bilbo Baggins Ph: +43 1 45688981

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;735&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	AMDCORP3
Message Type	798
Receiver	INGBNL2A
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:D345566
Sub-message type	:12:735
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21A:WER-RT4567-123 :21T:WER-RT4567 :21P:DC4567-123 :21S:DC4567 :20:DC123456 :21P:ASD88701 :30:200714 :26E:6 :13E:202007151218 :31C:200517 :52A:ANZBNK8M :12D:ACCP :29A:+BILBO BAGGINS +PH 43 1 45688981

## 2.2.4 Advice of Third Bank Documentary Credit

### Scope

The LC Advice of Third Bank Documentary Credit is sent to the corporate (beneficiary) by their bank and comprises a series of MT 798 messages. Collectively these messages are used to advise the issuance of a third bank documentary credit and the related terms and conditions under which the credit has been issued.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one third bank advice must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 780 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 710 message, specific to the bank-to-corporate exchange.
- In addition, a MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 710 and enveloping one MT 710 message must be included. The existing bank-to-bank MT 710 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable bank-to corporate implementation.
- In addition up to a maximum of seven MT 798 messages may optionally be included, each identified with a sub-message type of 711 and enveloping one MT 711 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 711 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document.

Each MT 798 message for a single third bank advice must be identified with the same Advising Bank Reference Number and this must be specified in field 21P, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters. Refer to section 2.2.1 (Advice of Documentary Credit) for elaboration on the approach to address instances where a source MT 710 or MT 711 exceeds 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

## MT 798<780> - LC Third Bank Advice Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;780&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;780&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 780.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;780&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<780> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/3, or 1/4 or 1/5 depending on the number of 711s.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the advising bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.5	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued. GUID: MT 798<780>This date must be the same as the field 31C (Date of Issue) in the MT 710.
2.6	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)  <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the bank which issued the documentary credit. RULE: For MT 798<780>, when specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the issuing bank.
2.7	58a	Advising Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)  <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the bank which is advising the documentary credit to the beneficiary, i.e. the name of the 'Advise Through' bank. RULE: For MT 798<780>, when specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the 'Advise Through' bank.

2.8	29B	Advising Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the 'Advise Through' bank.
2.9	56a	First Advising Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>C</b> /34x (Party Identifier) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the first advising bank involved in processing the documentary credit.  RULE: For MT 798<780>, when specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the first advising bank.
2.10	21B	First Advising Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the first advising bank to the documentary credit.
2.11	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the beneficiary to the documentary credit.
2.12	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.13	49D	Confirmation Indicator	7!x (Instruction)	M	DEFN: This field indicates whether documentary credit has been confirmed.  CODES: CONFIRM   WITHOUT.  GUID: This value should correspond to field 49 in the MT 798< 710>, unless this field has the value of "MAY ADD", in which case the advising bank would indicate "CONFIRM" or "WITHOUT" in field 49D, as the case may be,  GUID: Information concerning a silent confirmation should be entered in field 49F, field 49D is not intended for this purpose,
2.14	49F	Confirmation Information	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: Additional information concerning confirmation of the documentary credit advice.
2.15	49Y	Charges Information	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: Additional information concerning bank charges.
2.16	47E	Information from Advising Bank	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: Additional information from the 'Advise Through' bank related to the documentary credit advice.

2.17	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.18	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.19	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.20	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<710> - LC Third Bank Advice Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;710&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;710&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 710.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;710&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 710]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 710 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the advising. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 710 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 710 Message</b>		M	MT 710 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) <i>Fields listed here below for your convenience</i>
2.4	27	Sequence of Total	1!n/1!n (Number)(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the number of this message in the series of messages sent for a documentary credit, and the total number of messages in the series.
2.5	40B	Form of Documentary Credit	24x (Type) 24x (Code)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the type of credit and whether or not the Sender is adding its confirmation to the credit. TYPES: IRREVOCABLE   IRREVOCABLE TRANSFERABLE CODES: ADDING OUR CONFIRMATION   WITHOUT OUR CONFIRMATION
2.6	20	Sender's Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field contains the reference number which the Sender has assigned to the documentary credit.
2.7	21	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number which has been assigned by the Sender.

2.8	23	Reference to Pre-Advice	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies if the documentary credit has been pre-advised.
2.9	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank (Sender) considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.10	40E	Applicable Rules	30x/[35x] (Applicable Rules)(Narrative)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the rules the credit is subject to. CODES: EUCP LATEST VERSION   EUCPURR LATEST VERSION   ISP LATEST VERSION   OTHR   UCP LATEST VERSION   UCPURR LATEST VERSION Note: Narrative may only be used when code is OTHR
2.11	31D	Date and Place of Expiry	6!n29x (Date)(Place)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the latest date for presentation under the documentary credit and the place where documents may be presented. RULE: For MT 798<710> the date must be on or later than the date in Field 44C (Latest Date of Shipment) if field 44C is present.
2.12	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank of the credit.
2.13	50B	Non-Bank issuer	4*35x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the non-bank issuer of the credit.
2.14	51a	Applicant Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the bank of the applicant customer, if different from the issuing bank. GUID: For MT 798<710> this field is not required.
2.15	50	Applicant	4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party on behalf of which the documentary credit is being issued.
2.16	59	Beneficiary	[/34x] (Account 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party in favour of which the documentary credit is being issued.
2.17	32B	Currency Code, Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the documentary credit.

2.18	39A	Percentage Credit Amount Tolerance	2n/2n (Tolerance 1)(Tolerance 2)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the tolerance relative to the documentary credit amount as a percentage plus and/or minus that amount.
2.19	39C	Additional Amounts Covered	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies any additional amounts available to the beneficiary under the terms of the credit, such as insurance, freight, interest, etc. GUID: Additional amounts covered, for example, freight costs, interest, insurance.
2.20	41a	Available With ... By ...	<b>A</b> 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) 14x (Code) <b>D</b> 4*35x (Name & Address) 14x (Code)	M	DEFN: This field identifies the bank with which the credit is available (the place for presentation) and an indication of how the credit is available. CODES: BY ACCEPTANCE   BY DEF PAYMENT   BY MIXED PYMT   BY NEGOTIATION   BY PAYMENT GUID: When specified, the bank name may be a specific named bank or may be generically specified using one of the following recommended code words ADVISING BANK   ISSUING BANK   REIMBURSING BANK   ANY BANK   ANY BANK IN. For ANY BANK IN, the address may be used to specify the country, city, etc. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank with which the credit is requested to be made available.
2.21	42C	Drafts at ...	3*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the tenor of drafts to be drawn under the documentary credit. GUID: The draft tenor may be a specified using one of the following recommended code words SIGHT   AFTER DRAFT DATE   AFTER SHIPMENT DATE. RULE: For MT 798<710>, this field is only used if field 41a 'Available By' is not = BY DEF PAYMENT. Mandatory if field 41a 'Available By' = BY ACCEPTANCE.

2.22	42a	Drawee	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the drawee of the drafts to be drawn under the documentary credit.  RULE: For MT 798<710> only used if field 41a 'Available By' is not = BY DEF PAYMENT or not = BY MIXED PYMT. Mandatory if field 42C is used.  RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the drawee bank.
2.23	42M	Mixed Payment Details	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the payment dates, amounts and/or method for their determination in a documentary credit which is available by mixed payment.  GUID: The instalment tenor may be specified using one of the following recommended code words SIGHT   AFTER DRAFT DATE   AFTER SHIPMENT DATE.  RULE: For MT 798<710>, this field is mandatory if field 41a 'Available By' = BY MIXED PYMT.
2.24	42P	Negotiation/Deferred Payment Details	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the payment date or method for its determination in a documentary credit which is available by deferred payment only.  RULE: For MT 798<710>, this field is mandatory if field 41a 'Available By' = BY DEF PAYMENT.
2.25	43P	Partial Shipments	11x	O	DEFN: This field specifies whether or not partial shipments are allowed under the documentary credit.  One of the following code words must be used ALLOWED   CONDITIONAL   NOT ALLOWED.  GUID: The absence of this field means that partial shipments are allowed.
2.26	43T	Transhipment	11x	O	DEFN: This field specifies whether or not transhipment is allowed under the documentary credit.  One of the following code words must be used ALLOWED   CONDITIONAL   NOT ALLOWED.  GUID: The effectiveness of the option "transhipment not allowed" should be checked under the ICC UCP article relevant to the specific transport document used in this credit.  GUID: The absence of this field means that transhipment is allowed.

2.27	44A	Place of Taking in Charge/Dispatch from .../Place of Receipt	1* <del>140z65x</del> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the place of taking in charge (in case of a multimodal transport document), the place of receipt (in case of a road, rail or inland waterway transport document or a courier or expedited delivery service document), the place of dispatch or the place of shipment to be indicated on the transport document.
2.28	44E	Port of Loading/Airport of Departure	1* <del>140z65x</del> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the port of loading or airport of departure to be indicated on the transport document.
2.29	44F	Port of Discharge/Airport of Destination	1* <del>140z65x</del> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the port of discharge or airport of destination to be indicated on the transport document.
2.30	44B	Place of Final Destination/For Transportation to .../Place of Delivery	1* <del>140z65x</del> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the final destination or place of delivery to be indicated on the transport document.
2.31	44C	Latest Date of Shipment	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the latest date for loading on board/dispatch/taking in charge.
2.32	44D	Shipment Period	6*65x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the period of time during which the goods are to be loaded on board/despatched/taken in charge. RULE: For MT 798<710>, if field 44C is used, field 44D must not be used.
2.33	45A	Description of Goods and/or Services	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: this field contains a description of the goods and/or services. GUID: Purchase Order details may be repeated, product details (line item) may be repeated per Purchase Order. GUID: Last line of the description should specify the applicable INCOTERM, e.g., CIF HAMBURG.
2.34	46A	Documents Required	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of any documents required. GUID: The document descriptions should be structured as follows: 1) Invoicing documents, 2) Transport Documents, 3) Insurance Documents, 4) Other documents.

2.35	47A	Additional Conditions	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of further conditions of the documentary credit
2.36	49G	Special Payment Conditions for Beneficiary	100*65z	O	DEFN: This field specifies special payment conditions applicable to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions.
2.37	49H	Special Payment Conditions for Bank Only	100*65z	O	DEFN: This field specifies special payment conditions applicable to a bank without disclosure to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions. Content of the field must specify to which bank it is addressed.
2.38	71D	Charges	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field may be used only to specify charges to be borne by the beneficiary. RULE: For MT 798<710> this field is not used.
2.39	48	Period for Presentation in Days	3n/[35x] (Days)(Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the period of time after the date of shipment within which the documents must be presented for payment, acceptance or negotiation.
2.40	49	Confirmation Instructions	7!x (Instruction)	M	DEFN: This field contains confirmation instructions from the issuing bank for the requested confirmation party. CODES: CONFIRM   MAY ADD   WITHOUT.
2.41	58a	Requested Confirmation Party	<b>A</b> [/1!a] [/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: Bank which is requested to add its confirmation or may add its confirmation. Field must be present if confirmation instructions is MAY ADD, or CONFIRM.
2.42	53a	Reimbursing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the bank which has been authorised by the Sender to reimburse drawings under the documentary credit. This may be a branch of the Sender or the Receiver, or an entirely different bank.
2.43	78	Instructions to the Paying/Accepting/Negotiating Bank	12*65x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies instructions to the paying, accepting or negotiating bank. It may also indicate if pre-notification of a reimbursement claim or pre-debit notification to the issuing bank is required.
<b>2.44</b>	<b>78D</b>	<b>Instructions from Intermediary Bank</b>	<b>12*65x (Narrative)</b>	<b>O</b>	<b>DEFN: This field specifies instructions from the intermediary banks.</b>

2.4 <u>54</u>	57a	'Advise Through' Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>B</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) [35x] (Location) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the bank, if different from the Receiver, through which the documentary credit is to be advised/confirmed to the beneficiary.
2.4 <u>65</u>	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the Receiver.

### MT 710 Network Validated Rules

**C1** When used, fields 42C and 42a must both be present (Error code(s): C90).

**C2** Either fields 42C and 42a together, or field 42M alone, or field 42P alone may be present. No other combination of these fields is allowed (Error code(s): C90).

**C3** Either field 44C or 44D, but not both, may be present (Error code(s): D06).

**C4** Either field 52a or field 50B, but not both, must be present (Error code(s): C06).

## MT 798<711> - LC Third Bank Advice Extension

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;711&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;711&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 711.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <span style="color:red">[n*78z][n*145z]</span> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;711&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 711]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 711 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the advising bank.RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 711 Message Reference Guide.
2.3		<b>MT 711 Message</b>		M	MT 711 message contents.(Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) <i>Fields listed here below for your convenience</i> NOTE: A maximum of seven MT 798<711>s are permitted.
2.4	27	Sequence of Total	1!n/1!n (Number)(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the number of this message in the series of messages sent for a documentary credit, and the total number of messages in the series. NOTE: A maximum of seven MT 798<711>s are permitted.
2.5	20	Sender's Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field contains the reference number which the Sender has assigned to the documentary credit.
2.6	21	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number which has been assigned by the Sender. RULE: For MT 798<711> this field must specify a documentary credit number, pre-assigned by the applicant's bank, or a fixed value of NONREF

2.7	45A	Description of Goods and/or Services	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of the goods and/or services.
2.8	46A	Documents Required	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of any documents required.
2.9	47A	Additional Conditions	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of further conditions of the documentary credit.
2.10	49G	Special Payment Conditions for Beneficiary	100*65z	O	DEFN: This field specifies special payment conditions applicable to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions.
2.11	49H	Special Payment Conditions for Bank Only	100*65z	O	DEFN: This field specifies special payment conditions applicable to a bank without disclosure to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions. Content of the field must specify to which bank it is addressed.

## 2.2.5 Response to Documentary Credit Presentation

### Scope

The Response to Documentary Credit presentation is sent to the corporate (beneficiary) by its bank and comprises one MT 798 message. It is used by the bank to acknowledge the receipt of documents under a documentary presentation from the beneficiary, and at the same time, to report discrepancies if any and/or provide further instructions and/or information as appropriate.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Response to Documentary Credit Presentation must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 737 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for corporate-to-bank exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

## MT 798<737> - Response to Documentary Credit Presentation Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;737&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;737&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 737.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;737&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<737> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the related reference number assigned by the customer.
2.5	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer. In this case, the documentary credit presentation.
2.6	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used for other purposes, for example to establish the submission date/time of a documentary presentation.
2.7	21R	Presentation Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the nominated/confirming bank to the documentary presentation.
2.8	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.9	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued.

2.10	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.11	58a	Nominated/Confirming Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the nominated/confirming bank, the bank with which the credit is available or is confirmed. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.12	29B	Nominated/Confirming Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the nominated/confirming bank.
2.13	31S	Date of Presentation	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the nominated/confirming bank received the documents.
2.14	34O	Presentation Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the currency code and amount of the documentary presentation.
2.15	12D	Acceptance Notification	4!c (Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the Bank's response to a presentation of documents under an LC  CODES: REFU = REFUSED COMP = COMPLIANT  These terms have to be understood as they are defined by UCP.
2.16	77J	Discrepancies	70*50z (Narrative) Line 1 /8a/[add'l information] (Code)(Narrative) Lines 2-70 [/add'l information] (Narrative) or /8a/[add'l information] (Code)(Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the discrepancy(ies) identified in the document(s) as presented.  GUID: 77J must be present if 12D is REFU, otherwise it should not be present.
2.17	24E	Dispatch of Documents	4!c/[35x] (Code)(Additional Information)	O	DEFN: This field specifies that the documents have been dispatched and the method by which the documents are dispatched to the issuing bank.  CODES: COUR = BY COURIER (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) AIRM = BY AIRMAIL

2.18	31N	Documents Sent Date	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the documents were sent to the issuing bank.
2.19	78B	Instructions from the Bank	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates instructions from the bank.
2.20	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.
2.21	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.  CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel
2.22	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer  CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.23	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.24	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

## Business Example

### Narrative

ABC Company, Kaerntnerstrasse 3, Vienna, imports beer from Amdam Company, PO Box 123, Amsterdam, under a documentary credit.

Amdam Co.'s bank is ING Bank, Amsterdam.

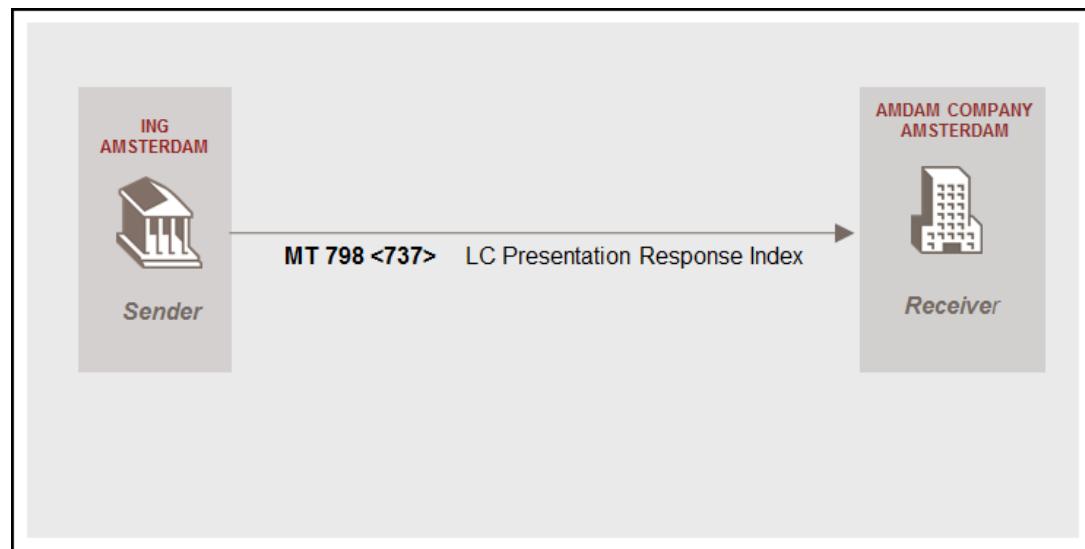
ABC Co.'s bank is RZB, Vienna.

Amdam Co. has presented documents to its confirming bank ING. ING sends back an MT 798<737>

In addition to the above information, the documentary credit application is comprised of the following:

Documentary Credit Number:	DC123456
Issuing Bank:	RZB, Vienna. RZBAATWW
Amount:	Euro 100,000
Issue Date:	30-Apr-20
Expiry Date:	30-Jul-20
Advising Bank:	ING BANK, Amsterdam INGBNL2A

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;737&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	INGBNL2A
Message Type	798
Receiver	AMDCORP3
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:D345566
Sub-message type	:12:737
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21P:DC123456-123 :21S:DC123456 :20:DC123456 :21A:AMDCORP-5656 :31C:200430 :13E:202005301230 :52A:RZBAATWW :58A:INGBNL2A :31S:200527 :24E:COUR :12D:ACCP :34O:EUR50000, :31N:200530

## 2.2.6 Response to Advice of Discrepant Presentation

### Scope

The Response to Advice of Discrepant Presentation is sent by the corporate (beneficiary) to its bank and comprises one MT 798 message. It is used to instruct the bank on the handling and disposal of discrepant documents.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Response to Advice of Discrepant Presentation must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 738 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for corporate-to-bank exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

## MT 798<738> - Response to Advice of Discrepant Presentation Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;738&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;738&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 738.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;738&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<738> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the customer. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the nominated/confirming bank.
2.5	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank. In this case, the reference in the "Response to Documentary Credit Presentation" message.
2.6	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used for other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.
2.7	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.8	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.9	21R	Presentation Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the nominated/confirming bank to the documentary presentation. (21R in 798 <737>)

2.10	34O	Presentation Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the currency code and amount of the documentary presentation.
2.11	31S	Date of Discrepancy Advice Receipt	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the beneficiary received the Response to Documentary Credit Presentation.
2.12	12D	Beneficiary Instructions	4!c (Code)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the Beneficiary's instructions regarding handling of discrepant documents.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <p>APPR = Send documents to Issuing Bank on approval basis          NEWP = Beneficiary preparing new set of documents          HOLD = Hold documents and contact the Issuing Bank          OTHR = Other</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;738&gt;, field 72Z "Corporate to Bank Information" must be used when the Beneficiary Instructions is OTHR to describe the handling instructions for discrepant documents.</p>
2.13	72Z	Corporate to Bank Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the bank.
2.14	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name, for ancillary documentation / information.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <p>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct          FAXT = Fax transfer          EMAL = Email transfer          MAIL = Postal delivery          COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)          HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)          OTHR = Other delivery channel</p>
2.15	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <p>BICC = BIC          OTHR = Other</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

2.16	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.17	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

## Business Example

### Narrative

ABC Company, Kaeerntnerstrasse 3, Vienna, imports beer from Amdam Company, PO Box 123, Amsterdam, under a documentary credit.

Amdam Co.'s bank is ING BANK, Amsterdam.

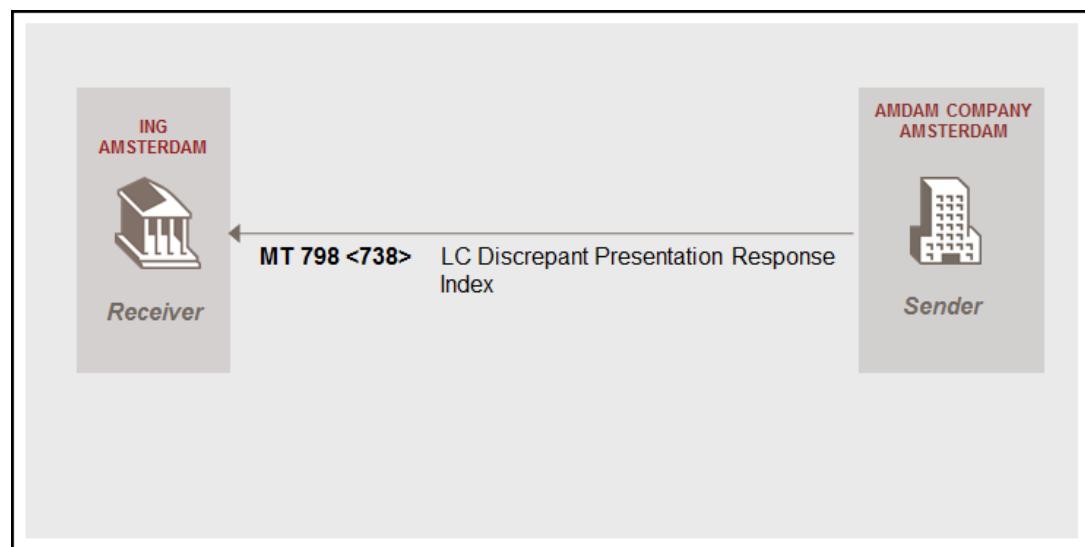
ABC Co.'s bank is RZB, Vienna.

After a presentation, Amdam Co. responds to a "Response to a Documentary Credit Presentation (737)" message received from ING BANK, Amsterdam, where ING Bank has refused the documents.

In addition to the above information, the documentary credit application is comprised of the following:

Documentary Credit Number:	DC123456
Issuing Bank:	RZB, Vienna. RZBAATWW
Amount:	Euro 100,000
Issue Date:	30-Apr-20
Expiry Date:	30-Jul-20
New Expiry Date:	30-Aug-20
Advising Bank:	ING BANK, Amsterdam INGBNL2A
Applicant	ABC Company
First Beneficiary:	Amdam Company, PO Box 123, Amsterdam

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;738&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	AMDCORP3
Message Type	798
Receiver	INGBNL2A
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:D345566
Sub-message type	:12:738
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21A:AMDCORP-5757 :21T:AMDCORP :21P:DC123456-123 :21S:DC123456 :13E:202005301230 :20:DC123456 :31C:200430 :34O:EUR50000, :31S:200525 :12D:NEWP

## 2.2.7 Notification of Authorisation to Pay, Accept or Negotiate

### Scope

The Notification of authorisation to Pay, Accept or Negotiate is sent to the corporate (beneficiary) by its bank and comprises one MT 798 message. They are used to notify (at the time of the interbank MT 752 message) the corporate that the documents may be taken up, notwithstanding the discrepancies, provided they are otherwise in order.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Notification of authorisation to Pay, Accept or Negotiate must comprise:

- one MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 751 and enveloping one index message. This message contains data specific to the bank-to-corporate exchange and data from the MT 752.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

This message must be used for documentary credits and may also be used for standby LCs. It must not be used for guarantees.

## MT 798<751> - Notification of authorisation to Pay, Accept or Negotiate Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;751&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;751&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 751.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	<p>73z (Text)  <u>[n*78z][n*145z]</u>  <u>1</u> (Text)</p>	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;751&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<751> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.5	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.6	21R	Presentation Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the nominated/confirming bank to the documentary presentation.
2.7	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.8	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.

2.9	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.10	58a	Nominated/Confirming Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the nominated/confirming bank, the bank with which the credit is available or is confirmed. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.11	29D	Nominated/Confirming Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the Nominated/Confirming bank.
2.12	50	Applicant	4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the party on behalf of which the documentary credit was issued.
2.13	35B	Principal Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and principal amount of the presentation (amount to be deducted from the outstanding amount of the documentary credit).
2.14	33B	Additional Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies any additional amount(s) as allowed for in the credit, for example, insurance. (requested at the time of the presentation)
2.15	32B	Credit Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the documentary credit.
2.16	12R	Payment Terms	4!c	M	DEFN: The field specifies the payment terms applied for this presentation. CODES: SGHT = BY SIGHT PAYMENT ACCT = BY ACCEPTANCE DEFP = BY DEFERRED PAYMENT MIXD = BY MIXED PAYMENT NEGN = NEGOTIATION

2.17	12S	Payment Liability	4!c	M	<p>DEFN: The field specifies the payment liability status.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <p>BPOB = PAYMENT WITH OBLIGATION TO PAY NOOB = PAYMENT WITHOUT OBLIGATION TO PAY</p> <p>GUID: The field is an indication by a nominated bank to the beneficiary as to whether, in acting as the nominated bank, it has agreed to honour or negotiate payment (BPOB it has agreed, NOOB it has not agreed). Refer also to UCP 600 Article 12a.</p>
2.18	31M	Maturity Date	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the value of the accepted discrepant documents are due to be paid..
2.19	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.
2.20	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name, for ancillary documentation / information.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <p>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel</p>
2.21	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <p>BICC = BIC OTHR = Other</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.22	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

2.23	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
------	-----	----------------------	-------------------------------------	---	--

## Business Example

### Narrative

ABC Company, Kærntnerstrasse 3, Vienna, imports beer from Amdam Company, PO Box 123, Amsterdam, under a documentary credit.

Amdam Co.'s bank is ING BANK, Amsterdam.

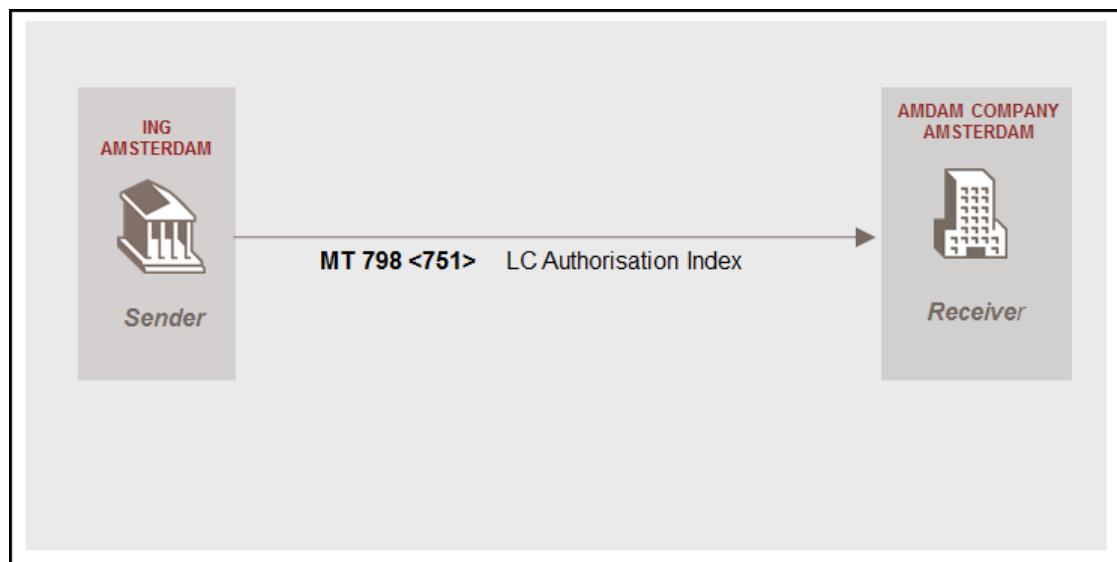
ABC Co.'s bank is RZB, Vienna.

After a presentation, ING sends a message to notify the corporate that the documents may be taken up, notwithstanding the discrepancies, provided they are otherwise in order.

In addition to the above information, the documentary credit application is comprised of the following:

Documentary Credit Number:	DC123456
Issuing Bank:	RZB, Vienna. RZBAATWW
Amount:	Euro 100,000
Issue Date:	30-Apr-20
Expiry Date:	30-Jul-20
Advising Bank:	ING BANK, Amsterdam INGBNL2A
Applicant	ABC Company
Payment	At sight

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;751&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	INGBNL2A
Message Type	798
Receiver	AMDCORP3
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:D345577
Sub-message type	:12:751
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21P:DC123456-134 :21S:DC123456 :20:DC123456 :21R:AMDCORP-5757 :31C:200430 :13E:202005301230 :52A:RZBAATWW :50:ABC CO, KAERNTNERSTRASSE 3 VIENNA :35B:EUR100000, :12R:SGHT :12S:NOOB

## 2.2.8 Notification of Advice of Payment/Acceptance/Negotiation

### Scope

The Notification of Advice of Payment/Acceptance/Negotiation is sent to the corporate (applicant or beneficiary) by its bank and comprises two MT 798 messages. They are used to notify (at the time of the MT 754 message) the corporate that the documents were presented to the paying, accepting or negotiating bank in accordance with the credit terms and are being forwarded as instructed.

Please refer to section 2.1.8 under Import Documentary Credit flows for the specification of this MT 798 flow.

## 2.2.9 Notification of Advice of Discharge

### Scope

The Notification of Advice of Discharge is sent to the corporate (applicant or beneficiary) by its bank and comprises two MT 798 messages. They are used to notify (with a copy of the MT 732 message) the corporate that the documents received with discrepancies have been taken up by the issuing bank.

Please refer to section 2.1.9 under Import Documentary Credit flows for the specification of this MT 798 flow.

## 2.2.10 Notification of Advice of Refusal

### Scope

The Notification of Advice of Refusal is sent to the corporate (applicant or beneficiary) by its bank and comprises two MT 798 messages. They are used to notify (with a copy of the MT 734 message) the corporate that the documents received with discrepancies have been refused by the issuing bank.

Please refer to section 2.1.10 under Import Documentary Credit flows for the specification of this MT 798 flow.

## 2.2.11 Notification of Advice of Reimbursement or Payment

### Scope

The Notification of Advice of Reimbursement or Payment is sent to the corporate (applicant or beneficiary) by its bank and comprises two MT 798 messages. They are used to notify (at the time of the MT 756 message) the corporate about reimbursement or payment, to that bank, for a drawing under a documentary credit for which no specific reimbursement instructions or payment provisions were provided.

Please refer to section 2.1.11 under Import Documentary Credit flows for the specification of this MT 798 flow.

## 2.2.12 Request for Transfer of a Documentary Credit

### Scope

The Request for Transfer of a Documentary Credit is sent by the corporate (beneficiary) to its bank and comprises one MT 798 message. It is used to instruct the bank to transfer a documentary credit to a second beneficiary as detailed in the message.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Request for Transfer of a Documentary Credit must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 722 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for corporate-to-bank exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

## MT 798<722> - Request for Transfer of a Documentary Credit Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;722&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;722&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 722.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;722&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<722> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank. GUID: This is the reference from the Advice.
2.4	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.6	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used for other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.
2.7	32B	Transfer Credit Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the transferred documentary credit.

2.8	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the bank which issued the documentary credit.  RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.  RULE: 52a or 50B must be present, but not both.
2.9	50B	Non-Bank Issuer	4*35x	O	This field specifies the non-bank issuer of the credit.  RULE: 52a or 50B must be present, but not both.
2.10	58a	Second Beneficiary Advising Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the bank which is advising the documentary credit to the second beneficiary.  RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.11	59K	Second Beneficiary	[/34x] (Account) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the beneficiary of the transferred credit, referred to in the UCP as the second beneficiary.
2.12	29F	Second Beneficiary Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the second beneficiary.
2.13	59	First Beneficiary	[/34x] (Account) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the beneficiary requesting the transfer of the credit, referred to in the UCP as the first beneficiary.
2.14	29A	First Beneficiary Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the first beneficiary.
2.15	31D	New Date and Place of Expiry	6!n29x (Date)(Place)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the latest date for presentation under the documentary credit and the place where documents may be presented, if changed.
2.16	41a	Available With ... By ...	<b>A</b> 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) 14x (Code) <b>D</b> 4*35x (Name & Address) 14x (Code)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the bank with which the credit is available (the place for presentation) and an indication of how the credit is available.  CODES: BY ACCEPTANCE   BY DEF PAYMENT   BY MIXED PYMT   BY NEGOTIATION   BY PAYMENT  GUID: Only the Bank may be changed as part of the transfer request, not the code.
2.17	48	New Period for Presentation in Days	3n[/35x] (Days)(Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the new, that is, revised, period of time after the date of shipment within which the documents must be presented for payment, acceptance or negotiation.

2.18	39A	New Percentage Credit Amount Tolerance	2n/2n (Tolerance 1)(Tolerance 2)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the new, that is, revised, tolerance relative to the documentary credit amount as a percentage plus and/or minus that amount.
2.19	44C	New Latest Date of Shipment	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the new, that is, revised, latest date for loading on board/dispatch/taking in charge. RULE: Either field 44C or 44D, but not both, may be present.
2.20	44D	New Shipment Period	6*65x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the new, that is, revised, period of time during which the goods are to be loaded on board/despatched/taken in charge. RULE: Either field 44C or 44D, but not both, may be present.
2.21	37J	New Insurance in Percent	12d	O	DEFN: This field specifies the new, that is, revised, percentage for which insurance cover must be effected.
2.22	45C	Other Transfer Terms and Conditions	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies any other terms and conditions to be revised under the transfer of the documentary credit for which there is no other specific field.
2.23	72Z	Corporate to Bank Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the bank.
2.24	23X	Transfer Request Channel	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field type of channel for the claim presentation and where appropriate, any associated file name.  CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) ORIG = Original request (this MT 798<722> represents the complete request, no other documentation to accompany or follow this message) OTHR = Other delivery channel  GUID: Any code in this field, other than ORIG, should be considered as an incomplete request from the beneficiary.

2.25	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer  CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.26	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.27	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

## Business Example

Please note that for the following examples, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the transfer as requested.

### Narrative

ABC Company, Kaeerntnerstrasse 3, Vienna, imports beer from Amdam Company, PO Box 123, Amsterdam, under a documentary credit.

Amdam Co.'s bank is ING BANK, Amsterdam.

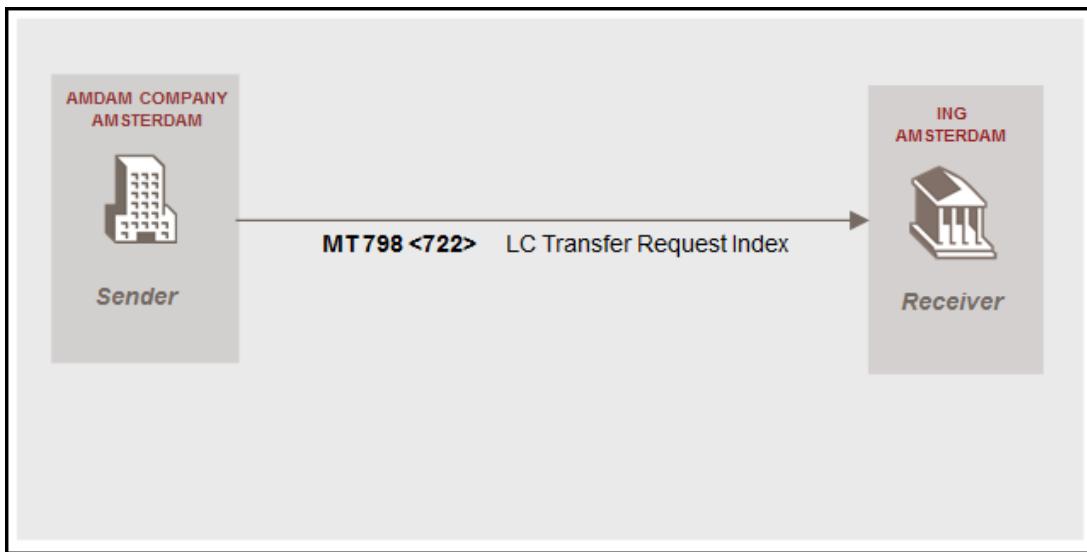
ABC Co.'s bank is RZB, Vienna.

Amdam Co. requests to transfer the documentary credit to Beer International, Keizerstraat 100, Amsterdam

In addition to the above information, the documentary credit application is comprised of the following:

Documentary Credit Number:	DC123456
Issuing Bank:	RZB, Vienna. RZBAATWW
Amount:	Euro 100,000
Issue Date:	30-Apr-20
Expiry Date:	30-Jul-20
New Expiry Date:	30-Aug-20
Advising Bank:	ING BANK, Amsterdam INGBNL2A
Applicant	ABC Company
First Beneficiary:	Amdam Company, PO Box 123, Amsterdam
Second Beneficiary:	Beer International, Keizerstraat 100, Amsterdam
First Beneficiary Contact	Bilbo Baggins Ph: +31 1 45688981
Second Beneficiary Customer Contact:	Jan Smits Ph: +31 1 46884321

### Information Flow



### SWIFT Messages

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;722&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	AMDCORP3
Message Type	798
Receiver	INGBNL2A
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:D345566
Sub-message type	:12:722
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21A:DC123456-123 :21T:DC123456 :21S:BKDC123456 :20:DC123456 :31C:200430 :13E:202005301230 :32B:EUR100000, :52A:RZBAATWW :59K:BEER INTERNATIONAL KEIZERSTRAAT 100, AMSTERDAM :29F:JAN SMITS PH +31 1 46884321 :59:AMDAM COMPANY PO BOX 123, AMSTERDAM :29A:BILBO BAGGINS PH +31 1 45688981 :31D:090830RZBAATWW :48:6/FCR

## 2.2.13 Advice of Transfer of a Documentary Credit

### Scope

The LC Advice of Transfer of a Documentary Credit is sent to the corporate (second beneficiary) by their bank and comprises a series of MT 798 messages. Collectively these messages are used to advise the transfer of a documentary credit and the related terms and conditions under which the credit has been transferred.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one advice must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 782 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 720 message, specific to the bank-to-corporate exchange.
- In addition, MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 720 and enveloping one MT 720 message must be included. The existing bank-to-bank MT 720 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable bank-to corporate implementation.
- In addition up to a maximum of seven MT 798 messages may optionally be included, each identified with a sub-message type of 721 and enveloping one MT 721 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 721 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document.

Each MT 798 message for a single transfer advice must be identified with the same Advising Bank Reference Number and this must be specified in field 21P, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters. Refer to section 2.2.1 (Advice of Documentary Credit) for elaboration on the approach to address instances where a source MT 720 or MT 721 exceeds 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

## MT 798<782> - LC Transfer Advice Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;782&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;782&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 782.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;782&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<782> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/3 or 1/4 or 1/5 depending on the number of 721s.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.5	58a	Advising Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the bank which is advising the documentary credit. RULE: For MT 798<782>, when specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the advising bank.
2.6	29B	Advising Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the advising bank.
2.7	55a	Transferring Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>B</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) [35x] (Location) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the transferring bank involved in processing the documentary credit. RULE: For MT 798<782>, when specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the transferring bank.

2.8	21N	Transferring Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the transferring bank to the documentary credit.
2.9	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the 2nd beneficiary to the documentary credit.
2.10	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.11	49D	Confirmation Indicator	7!x (Instruction)	M	<p>DEFN: This field indicates whether documentary credit has been confirmed. CODES: CONFIRM   WITHOUT.</p> <p>GUID: This value should correspond to field 49 in the MT 798&lt; 720&gt;, unless this field has the value of "MAY ADD", in which case the advising bank would indicate "CONFIRM" or "WITHOUT" in field 49D, as the case may be,</p> <p>GUID: Information concerning a silent confirmation should be entered in field 49F, field 49D is not intended for this purpose,</p>
2.12	49F	Confirmation Information	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: Additional information concerning confirmation of the documentary credit advice.
2.13	49Y	Charges Information	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: Additional information concerning bank charges.
2.14	47E	Information from Advising Bank	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: Additional information from the advising bank related to the transferred documentary credit.

2.15	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.16	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.17	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.18	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<720> - LC Transfer Advice Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;720&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;720&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 720.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;720&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

**Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 720]**

No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 720 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the advising bank. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 720 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 720 Message</b>		M	MT 720 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) <i>Fields listed here below for your convenience</i>
2.4	27	Sequence of Total	1!n/1!n (Number)(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the number of this message in the series of messages sent for a documentary credit, and the total number of messages in the series.
2.5	40B	Form of Documentary Credit	24x (Type) 24x (Code)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the type of credit and whether or not the Sender is adding its confirmation to the credit. TYPES: IRREVOCABLE CODES: ADDING OUR CONFIRMATION   WITHOUT OUR CONFIRMATION
2.6	20	Transferring Bank's Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field contains the reference number which the transferring bank (Sender) has assigned to the documentary credit.

2.7	21	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number which has been assigned by the Sender.
2.8	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank (Sender) considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.9	40E	Applicable Rules	30x/[35x] (Applicable Rules)(Narrative)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the rules the credit is subject to.  CODES: EUCP LATEST VERSION   EUCPURR LATEST VERSION   ISP LATEST VERSION   OTHR   UCP LATEST VERSION   UCPURR LATEST VERSION  Note: Narrative may only be used when code is OTHR
2.10	31D	Date and Place of Expiry	6!n29x (Date)(Place)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the latest date for presentation under the documentary credit and the place where documents may be presented.  RULE: For MT 798<720> the date must be on or later than the date in Field 44C (Latest Date of Shipment) if field 44C is present.
2.11	52a	Issuing Bank of the Original Documentary Credit	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank of the credit.
2.12	50B	Non-Bank issuer of the Original Documentary Credit	4*35x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the non-bank issuer of the credit.
2.13	50	First Beneficiary	4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party on behalf of which the documentary credit has been issued/transferred.
2.14	59	Second Beneficiary	[/34x] (Account 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the name of the beneficiary of the transferred credit, referred to in the UCP as the <b>second beneficiary</b> .
2.15	32B	Currency Code, Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the documentary credit.

2.16	39A	Percentage Credit Amount Tolerance	2n/2n (Tolerance 1)(Tolerance 2)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the tolerance relative to the documentary credit amount as a percentage plus and/or minus that amount.
2.17	39C	Additional Amounts Covered	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies any additional amounts available to the beneficiary under the terms of the credit, such as insurance, freight, interest, etc. GUID: Additional amounts covered, for example, freight costs, interest, insurance.
2.18	41a	Available With ... By ...	<b>A</b> 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) 14x (Code) <b>D</b> 4*35x (Name & Address) 14x (Code)	M	DEFN: This field identifies the bank with which the credit is available (the place for presentation) and an indication of how the credit is available. CODES: BY ACCEPTANCE   BY DEF PAYMENT   BY MIXED PYMT   BY NEGOTIATION   BY PAYMENT GUID: When specified, the bank name may be a specific named bank or may be generically specified using one of the following recommended code words ADVISING BANK   ISSUING BANK   REIMBURSING BANK   ANY BANK   ANY BANK IN. For ANY BANK IN, the address may be used to specify the country, city, etc. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank with which the credit is requested to be made available.
2.19	42C	Drafts at ...	3*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the tenor of drafts to be drawn under the documentary credit. GUID: The draft tenor may be a specified using one of the following recommended code words SIGHT   AFTER DRAFT DATE   AFTER SHIPMENT DATE. RULE: For MT 798<720>, this field is only used if field 41a 'Available By' is not = BY DEF PAYMENT. Mandatory if field 41a 'Available By' = BY ACCEPTANCE.

2.20	42a	Drawee	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the drawee of the drafts to be drawn under the documentary credit.  RULE: For MT 798<720> only used if field 41a 'Available By' is not = BY DEF PAYMENT or not = BY MIXED PYMT. Mandatory if field 42C is used.  RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the drawee bank.
2.21	42M	Mixed Payment Details	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the payment dates, amounts and/or method for their determination in a documentary credit which is available by mixed payment.  GUID: The instalment tenor may be specified using one of the following recommended code words SIGHT   AFTER DRAFT DATE   AFTER SHIPMENT DATE.  RULE: For MT 798<720>, this field is mandatory if field 41a 'Available By' = BY MIXED PYMT.
2.22	42P	Negotiation/Deferred Payment Details	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the payment date or method for its determination in a documentary credit which is available by deferred payment only.  RULE: For MT 798<720>, this field is mandatory if field 41a 'Available By' = BY DEF PAYMENT.
2.23	43P	Partial Shipments	11x	O	DEFN: This field specifies whether or not partial shipments are allowed under the documentary credit.  One of the following code words must be used ALLOWED   CONDITIONAL   NOT ALLOWED.  GUID: The absence of this field means that partial shipments are allowed.

2.24	43T	Transhipment	11x	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies whether or not transhipment is allowed under the documentary credit.</p> <p>One of the following code words must be used ALLOWED   CONDITIONAL   NOT ALLOWED.</p> <p>GUID: The effectiveness of the option “transhipment not allowed” should be checked under the ICC UCP article relevant to the specific transport document used in this credit.</p> <p>GUID: The absence of this field means that transhipment is allowed.</p>
2.25	44A	Place of Taking in Charge/Dispatch from .../Place of Receipt	1* <u>140z65*</u> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the place of taking in charge (in case of a multimodal transport document), the place of receipt (in case of a road, rail or inland waterway transport document or a courier or expedited delivery service document), the place of dispatch or the place of shipment to be indicated on the transport document.
2.26	44E	Port of Loading/Airport of Departure	1* <u>140z65*</u> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the port of loading or airport of departure to be indicated on the transport document.
2.27	44F	Port of Discharge/Airport of Destination	1* <u>140z65*</u> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the port of discharge or airport of destination to be indicated on the transport document.
2.28	44B	Place of Final Destination/For Transportation to .../Place of Delivery	1* <u>140z65*</u> (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the final destination or place of delivery to be indicated on the transport document.
2.29	44C	Latest Date of Shipment	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the latest date for loading on board/dispatch/taking in charge.
2.30	44D	Shipment Period	6*65x (Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the period of time during which the goods are to be loaded on board/despatched/taken in charge.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;720&gt;, if field 44C is used, field 44D must not be used.</p>

2.31	45A	Description of Goods and/or Services	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of the goods and/or services. GUID: Purchase Order details may be repeated, product details (line item) may be repeated per Purchase Order. GUID: Last line of the description should specify the applicable INCOTERM, e.g., CIF HAMBURG.
2.32	46A	Documents Required	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of any documents required. GUID: The document descriptions should be structured as follows: 1) Invoicing documents, 2) Transport Documents, 3) Insurance Documents, 4) Other documents.
2.33	47A	Additional Conditions	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of further conditions of the documentary credit
2.34	49G	Special Payment Conditions for Beneficiary	100*65z	O	DEFN: This field specifies special payment conditions applicable to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions.
2.35	49H	Special Payment Conditions for Bank Only	100*65z	O	DEFN: This field specifies special payment conditions applicable to a bank without disclosure to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions. Content of the field must specify to which bank it is addressed.
2.36	71D	Charges	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field may be used only to specify charges to be borne by the beneficiary.
2.37	48	Period for Presentation in Days	3n[35x] (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the period of time after the date of shipment within which the documents must be presented for payment, acceptance or negotiation.
2.38	49	Confirmation Instructions	7!x (Instruction)	M	DEFN: This field contains confirmation instructions for the requested confirmation party. CODES: CONFIRM   MAY ADD   WITHOUT.

2.39	58a	Requested Confirmation Party	<b>A</b> [/1!a] [/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a] [/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: Bank which is requested to add its confirmation or may add its confirmation. Field must be present if confirmation instructions is MAY ADD, or CONFIRM
2.40	78	Instructions to the Paying/Accepting/Negotiating Bank	12*65x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies instructions to the paying, accepting or negotiating bank. It may also indicate if pre-notification of a reimbursement claim or pre-debit notification to the issuing bank is required.
<u>2.41</u>	<u>78D</u>	<u>Instructions from Transferring Bank</u>	<u>12*65x</u> <u>(Narrative)</u>	<u>O</u>	<u>DEFN: This field specifies instructions from the transferring banks.</u>
2.4 <u>24</u>	57a	'Advise Through' Bank	A [/1!a] [/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) B [/1!a] [/34x] (Party Identifier) [35x] (Location) D [/1!a] [/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the bank, if different from the Receiver, through which the documentary credit is to be advised/confirmed to the beneficiary.
2.4 <u>32</u>	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the Receiver.

### MT 720 Network Validated Rules

**C1** When used, fields 42C and 42a must both be present (Error code(s): C90).

**C2** Either fields 42C and 42a together, or field 42M alone, or field 42P alone may be present. No other combination of these fields is allowed (Error code(s): C90).

**C3** Either field 44C or 44D, but not both, may be present (Error code(s): D06).

**C4** Either field 52a or field 50B , but not both, must be present (Error code(s): C06).

## MT 798<721> - LC Transfer Advice Extension

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;721&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;721&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 721.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;721&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 721]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 721 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the advising bank. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 700 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 721 Message</b>		M	MT 721 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) NOTE: A maximum of seven MT 798<721>s are permitted. Fields listed here below for your convenience
2.4	27	Sequence of Total	1!n/1!n (Number)(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the number of this message in the series of messages sent for a documentary credit, and the total number of messages in the series. NOTE: A maximum of seven MT 798<721>s are permitted.
2.5	20	transferring Bank's Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field contains the reference number which the transferring bank (Sender) has assigned to the documentary credit.
2.6	21	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number which has been assigned by the Sender. RULE: For MT 798<711> this field must specify a documentary credit number, pre-assigned by the applicant's bank, or a fixed value of NONREF

2.7	45A	Description of Goods and/or Services	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of the goods and/or services.
2.8	46A	Documents Required	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of any documents required.
2.9	47A	Additional Conditions	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of further conditions of the documentary credit.
2.10	49G	Special Payment Conditions for Beneficiary	100*65z	O	DEFN: This field specifies special payment conditions applicable to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions.
2.11	49H	Special Payment Conditions for Bank Only	100*65z	O	DEFN: This field specifies special payment conditions applicable to a bank without disclosure to the beneficiary, for example, post-financing request/conditions. Content of the field must specify to which bank it is addressed.

## Business Example

Please note that for the following examples, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

ABC Company, Kaerntnerstrasse 3, Vienna, imports beer from Amdam Company, PO Box 123, Amsterdam, under a documentary credit.

Amdam Co.'s bank is ING BANK, Amsterdam.

ABC Co.'s bank is RZB, Vienna.

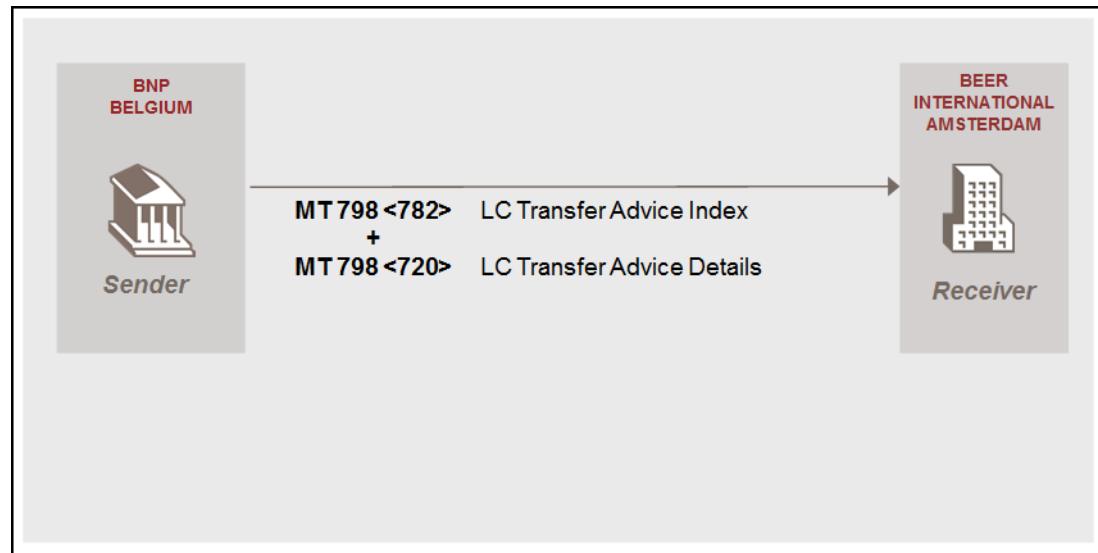
Amdam Co. has requested to transfer the documentary credit to Beer International, Keizerstraat 100, Amsterdam

BNP Amsterdam informs the second beneficiary of the transfer in its favour

In addition to the above information, the documentary credit application is comprised of the following:

Documentary Credit Number:	DC123456
Issuing Bank:	RZB, Vienna. RZBAATWW
Amount:	Euro 100,000
Issue Date:	30-Apr-20
Expiry Date:	30-Jul-20
New Expiry Date:	30-Aug-20
Transferring/Advising Bank:	ING BANK, Amsterdam INGBNL2A
Advising Bank:	BNP, Amsterdam BNPANL22
Applicant	ABC Company
First Beneficiary:	Amdam Company, PO Box 123, Amsterdam
Second Beneficiary:	Beer International, Keizerstraat 100, Amsterdam
First Beneficiary Contact	Bilbo Baggins Ph: +31 1 45688981
Second Beneficiary Customer Contact:	Jan Smits Ph: +31 1 46884321

### Information Flow



Could show previous step: transferring bank ING sending MT 720 to advising bank BNP

### SWIFT Messages

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;782&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	BNPANL22
Message Type	798
Receiver	BEERNLAA
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:D456754
Sub-message type	:12:782
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21P:ING546587-123 :21S:DC123456 :13E:202006051230 :58A:BNPANL22 :55A:INGBNL2A :21N:ING546587 :49D:CONFIRM

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;720&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	BNPANL22
Message Type	798
Receiver	BEERNLAA
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:D456755
Sub-message type	:12:720
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:ING546587-123 :27:1/1 :40B:IRREVOCABLE WITHOUT OUR CONFIRMATION:20:ING546587 :21:DC123456 :31C:200605 :40E:UCP LATEST VERSION :31D:200830AMSTERDAM:52A:RZBAATWW :50:AMDAM COMPANYPO BOX 123AMSTERDAM:59:BEER INTERNATIONAL KEIZERSTRAAT 100,AMSTERDAM :32B:EUR90000,:41A:BACOARBA BY PAYMENT:43P:ALLOWED:43T:ALLOWED:44A:AMSTERDAM:44B:VIENNA:45A:+4 0,000 BOTTLES OF BEERPACKEDED 12 TO AN EXPORT CARTON +FCA AMSTERDAM:46A:+SIGNED COMMERCIAL INVOICE INQUINTULATE + FORWARDING AGENTS CERTIFICATE OFRECEIPT SHOWING GOODS ADDRESSED TO THE APPLICANT:48:6/FCR:49:CONFIRM

## 2.2.14 Notification of Transfer of a Documentary Credit

### Scope

The Notification of Transfer of a Documentary Credit is sent to the corporate (first beneficiary) by its bank and comprises one or more MT 798 messages. Collectively these messages are used by the transferring bank to notify the first beneficiary that the transfer has been effected or refused.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one advice must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 723 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 720 message, specific to the bank-to-corporate exchange.
- The second optional MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 720 and enveloping one MT 720 message may be included. The existing bank-to-bank MT 720 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable bank-to corporate implementation.
- In addition up to a maximum of seven MT 798 messages may optionally be included, each identified with a sub-message type of 721 and enveloping one MT 721 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 721 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document.

Each MT 798 message for a single transfer notification must be identified with the same Bank Reference Number and this must be specified in field 21P, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Interbank messages (720 and possibly 721) should be included if Transfer Status (12E) is "effected" and may not be included if Transfer Status is "refused".

If within the transfer request messages by the first beneficiary is included any potential existing amendment, then these amendments will also be included within the LC transfer messages to the second beneficiary and this notification message should mention which amendment numbers are part of the transfer.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters. Refer to section 2.2.1 (Advice of Documentary Credit) for elaboration on the approach to address instances where a source MT 720 or MT 721 exceeds 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

## MT 798<723> - Notification of Transfer of Documentary Credit Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;723&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;723&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 723.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;723&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<723> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/2.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the transferring bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the customer.
2.5	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer. In this case, the documentary credit number or a fixed value of NONREF.
2.6	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.7	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.8	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used for other purposes, for example to establish the submission date/time of a documentary presentation.

2.9	12E	Transfer Status	4!c	M	DEFN: This field specifies the status of the transfer. CODES: TRNF = Transfer effected REFU = Transfer refused
2.10	31N	Transfer Date	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the transfer was made by the transferring bank. RULE: For MT 798<723> mandatory if field 12E (Transfer Status) is TRNF, otherwise not used.
2.11	49Y	Charges Information	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: Additional information concerning bank charges.
2.12	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.
2.13	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name. CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel
2.14	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.15	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

2.16	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
------	-----	----------------------	-------------------------------------	---	--

## MT 798<720> - LC Transfer Advice Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.  GUID: For MT 798<720> this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).  RULE: For MT 798<720> the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 720.
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.  RULE: For MT 798<720> the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 720]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 720 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the advising bank. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 720 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 720 Message</b>		M	MT 720 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)

## MT 798<721> - LC Transfer Advice Extension

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;721&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;721&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 721.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;721&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 721]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 721 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the advising bank. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 700 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 721 Message</b>		M	MT 721 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) NOTE: A maximum of seven MT 798<721>s are permitted.

## Business Example

Please note that for the following examples, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

ABC Company, Kaeerntnerstrasse 3, Vienna, imports beer from Amdam Company, PO Box 123, Amsterdam, under a documentary credit.

Amdam Co.'s bank is ING BANK, Amsterdam.

ABC Co.'s bank is RZB, Vienna.

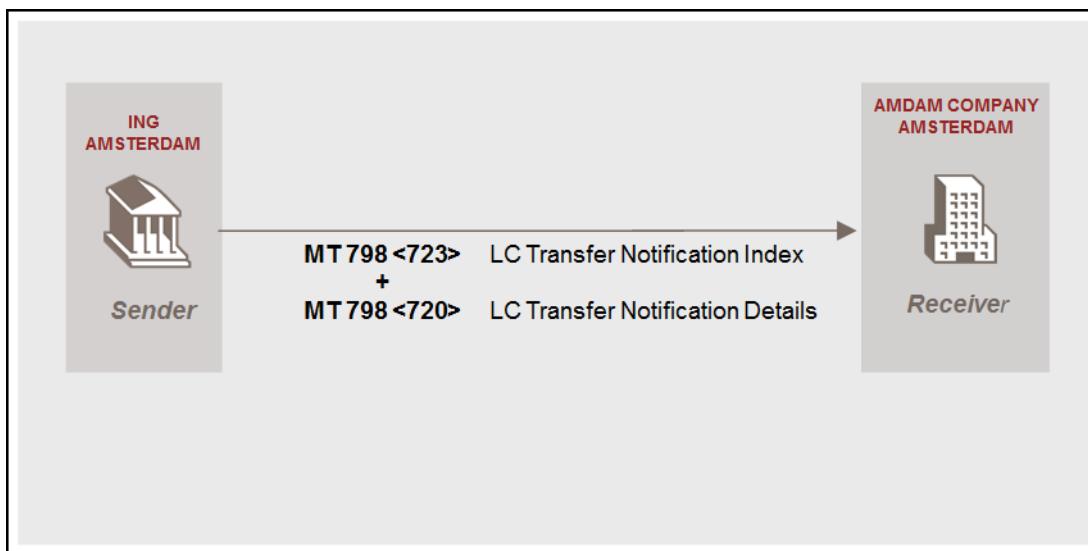
Amdam Co. has requested ING to transfer the documentary credit to Beer International, Keizerstraat 100, Amsterdam

ING Amsterdam informs the first beneficiary that the transfer is effected

In addition to the above information, the documentary credit application is comprised of the following:

Documentary Credit Number:	DC123456
Issuing Bank:	RZB, Vienna. RZBAATWW
Amount:	Euro 100,000
Issue Date:	30-Apr-20
Expiry Date:	30-Jul-20
New Expiry Date:	30-Aug-20
Transferring/Advising Bank:	ING BANK, Amsterdam INGBNL2A
Advising Bank:	BNP, Amsterdam BNPANL22
Applicant	ABC Company
First Beneficiary:	Amdam Company, PO Box 123, Amsterdam
Second Beneficiary:	Beer International, Keizerstraat 100, Amsterdam
First Beneficiary Contact	Bilbo Baggins Ph: +31 1 45688981
Second Beneficiary Customer Contact:	Jan Smits Ph: +31 1 46884321

### Information Flow



Could show previous step: transferring bank ING sending MT 720 to advising bank BNP

### SWIFT Messages

SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 <723>	
Explanation	Format
Sender	INGBNL2A
Message Type	798
Receiver	AMDCORP3
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:D456756
Sub-message type	:12:723
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21P:ING546587-125 :21S:DC123456 :21A:DC123456-123 :21T:DC123456-123 :20:DC123456 :31C:200605 :13E:202006051433 :12E:TRNF :31N:200530

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;720&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	INGBNL2A
Message Type	798
Receiver	AMDCORP3
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:D456757
Sub-message type	:12:720
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:ING546587-125 :27:2/2 :40B:IRREVOCABLE WITHOUT OUR CONFIRMATION :20:ING546587 :21:NONREF :31C:200605 :40E:UCP LATEST VERSION :31D:200830AMSTERDAM:52A:RZBAATWW :50:AMDAM COMPANYPO BOX 123AMSTERDAM:59:BEER INTERNATIONAL KEIZERSTRAAT 100,AMSTERDAM :32B:EUR90000,:41A:BACOARBA BY PAYMENT:43P:ALLOWED:43T:ALLOWED:44A:AMSTERDAM:44B:VIENNA:45A:+ 400,000 BOTTLES OF BEERPACKE 12 TO AN EXPORT CARTON +FCA AMSTERDAM:46A:+SIGNED COMMERCIAL INVOICE INQUINTUPLICATE + FORWARDING AGENTS CERTIFICATE OF RECEIPT SHOWING GOODS ADDRESSED TO THE APPLICANT:48:6/FCR:49:CONFIRM

## 2.2.15 Settlement of Export Documentary Credit

### Scope

The Settlement of Export Documentary Credit is sent to the corporate (beneficiary) by its bank and comprises one MT 798 message. It is used to report the settlement of payment and/or charges on the beneficiary's side by its bank.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Settlement of Export Documentary Credit must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 758 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for corporate-to-bank exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

## MT 798<758> - Settlement of Export Documentary Credit Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;758&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;758&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 758.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;758&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<758> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the related reference number assigned by the customer.
2.5	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.6	20	Documentary Credit Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.7	21R	Presentation Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the nominated/confirming bank to the documentary presentation.
2.8	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit as being issued.
2.9	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.

2.10	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.11	58a	Nominated/Confirming Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the nominated/confirming bank, the bank with which the credit is available or is confirmed. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.12	29B	Nominated/Confirming Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the nominated/confirming bank.
2.13	12R	Reason for Message	4!c (Code)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reason for the message. CODES: PAYM = ADVICE OF PAYMENT CHGS = ADVICE OF COMMISSIONS/CHARGES BOTH = ADVICE OF PAYMENT AND COMMISSIONS/CHARGES RULE: For MT 798<758> BOTH may only be used when the net amount is a credit. In the case of a debit, two messages should be used, one using PAYM and the other using CHGS
2.14	31S	Date of the Cover Letter	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date of the cover letter presented by the client or presented by the bank.
2.15	32B	Documentary Credit Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the documentary credit.
2.16	34D	Drawing Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the drawing for the documentary credit presentation, excluding any charges. RULE: Mandatory if field 12R is PAYM or BOTH
2.17	32G	Amount of Commission and Charges	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the commission and charges. <b>RULE: Mandatory if field 12R is CHGS or BOTH</b>

2.18	33a	Net Amount	<b>A</b> 6!n3!a15d (Date)(Currency)(Amount) <b>B</b> 3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the currency code and net amount that was or will be remitted or is to be claimed, and possibly a value date. RULE: For MT 798<758> (Export) when 12R (Reason for Message) is: PAYM this amount represents a credit. BOTH this amount represents a credit. CHGS this amount represents a debit.
------	-----	------------	---	---	--

2.19	71E	Details of Commission and Charges	100*35z (Narrative) or /8a/1!a/[3!a13d][Narrative] (Type)(Bank)(Currency) (Amount)(Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the details of commission and charges in free text or coded form.</p> <p><b>CODES for Type:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACCPCTCOM = Acceptance commission</li> <li>ADVCOM = Advising commission</li> <li>AMNDCOM = Amendment commission</li> <li>CMTCOM = Commitment commission</li> <li>COMM = Commission</li> <li>CONFCOM = Confirmation commission</li> <li>CORCOM = Correspondent's commission</li> <li>COUR = Courier charges</li> <li>DEFCOM = Deferred payment commission</li> <li>DSCRPCOM = Discrepancies fee</li> <li>FORFAIT = Forfaiting charges</li> <li>HANDLCOM = Handling commission</li> <li>INTEREST = Interest</li> <li>INSUR = Insurance premium</li> <li>MISC = Other charges</li> <li>NEGCOM = Negotiation commission</li> <li>NOTFCOM = Notification commission</li> <li>OBSER = Observation charges</li> <li>PAYCOM = Payment commission</li> <li>POST = Postage</li> <li>PREADCOM = Pre-advice commission</li> <li>PURCH = Negotiation charges</li> <li>REMB = Reimbursement charges</li> <li>SWIFT = SWIFT charges</li> <li>TELECHAR = Teletransmission charges</li> <li>TRANSCOM = Transfer charges</li> <li>TAX = Tax</li> </ul> <p><b>CODES for Bank:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>B= charged by the bank sending the message</li> <li>O= charged by another bank than the bank sending the message</li> </ul> <p>GUID: Narrative can be continued on next line with // at beginning of continuation line.</p> <p>GUID: same code can be repeated on several lines.</p> <p>GUID: taxes on charges or commissions can be reported on a TAX line, indicating the percentage tax and base amount in Narrative.</p> <p><b>GUID: Exact Codes must be used from the code list. When there are no codes available for a specific commission and/or charge, use 'MISC' followed by Narrative to define the commission and/or charge. Repeat MISC for each new/different commission and/or charge when suitable codes are not available.</b></p>
------	-----	-----------------------------------	--	---	---

2.20	57a	Account With Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>B</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) [35x] (Location) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the financial institution at which the amount claimed is to be settled.
2.21	53C	Settlement Account	/34x (Account)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the account number for the settlement and/or any commissions and charges (in the case where the field 25A, Alternative Charges Account, is not present).
2.22	34Y	Total Amount For Settlement Account	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the currency and the total amount that is debited or credited to the settlement account.  RULE: For MT 798<758> (Export) when 12R (Reason for Message) is:  PAYM this amount represents a credit. BOTH this amount represents a credit. CHGS this amount represents a debit.
2.23	25A	Alternative Charges Account	/34x (Account)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the account number for the settlement of commissions and charges, if different from field 53C (Settlement Account).
2.24	34W	Total Amount For Alternative Charges Account	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the currency and the total amount that is debited to the alternative charges account.
2.25	12F	Recourse Indicator	4!c (Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies whether a negotiated payment is with or without recourse.  CODES: WCSR = With recourse OCSR = Without recourse
2.26	36	Exchange Rate	12d	O	DEFN: This field specifies the exchange rate used to convert a foreign currency.
2.27	34X	Countervalue in Local Currency	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the countervalue of the converted foreign currency in local currency.
2.28	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.

2.29	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name, for ancillary documentation / information.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul>
2.30	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.31	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.32	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## Business Example 1

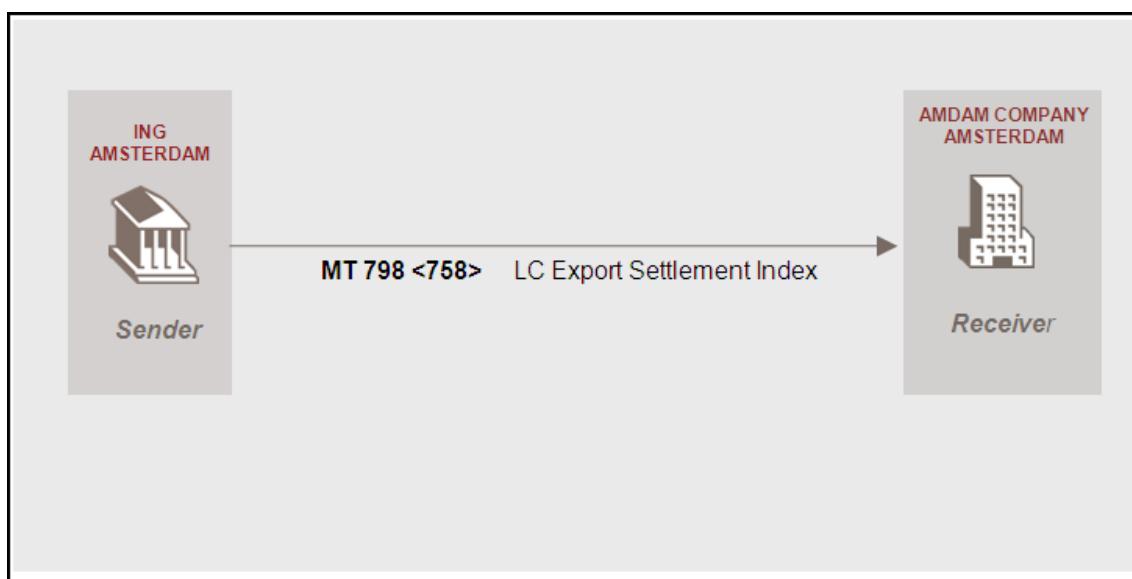
Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

On 16 June 2020 Adman Company Amsterdam, an exporter, received an advice of payment with respect to a documentary credit issued by SEB: This advice included all charges connected with the credit.

- Documentary credit issued is numbered DC123456
- The issue date of the credit is 16 March 2020.
- The credit amount is for EUR 100000.00, of which EUR 96000.00 drawn down by the beneficiary
- ING levied charges of EUR 495.00:
  - Advising commission EUR 75.00
  - Amendment commission EUR 40.00 (1 amendment)
  - Acceptance Commission EUR 240.00
  - Discrepancies Fee EUR 100.00 (1 presentation of discrepant documents)
  - Handling commission EUR 40.00

### Information Flow



### SWIFT Messages

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;758&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	INGBNL2A
Message Type	798
Receiver	AMDCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:VAB7753-201024
Sub-message type	:12:758
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21P:ASD88701 :21S:ASD88701 :20:DC123456 :31C:200316 :13E:202006161309 :12R:CHGS :31S:200723 :32B:EUR100000, :34D:EUR96000, :32G:EUR495, :33B:EUR495, :71E:/ADVCOM/B/EUR75, /AMNDCOM/B/EUR40, /ACCPCTCOM/B/EUR240, /DSCRPCOM/B/EUR100, /HANDLCOM/B/EUR40, :53C:/1091282 :34Y:EUR495,

## 2.3 Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Transactions

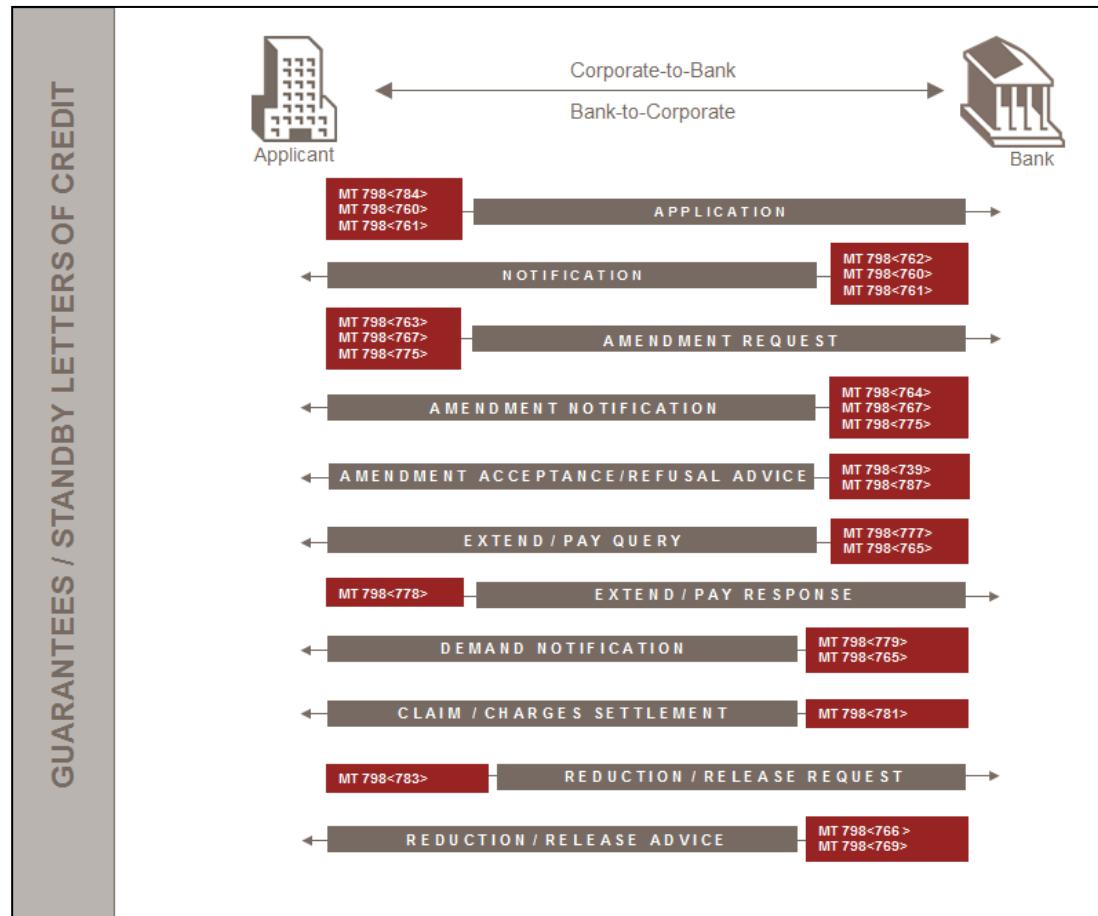
This section covers both Guarantee and Standby Letter of Credit (LC) transactions applicable to corporate entities involved in the trade process, specifically eighteen transaction flows:

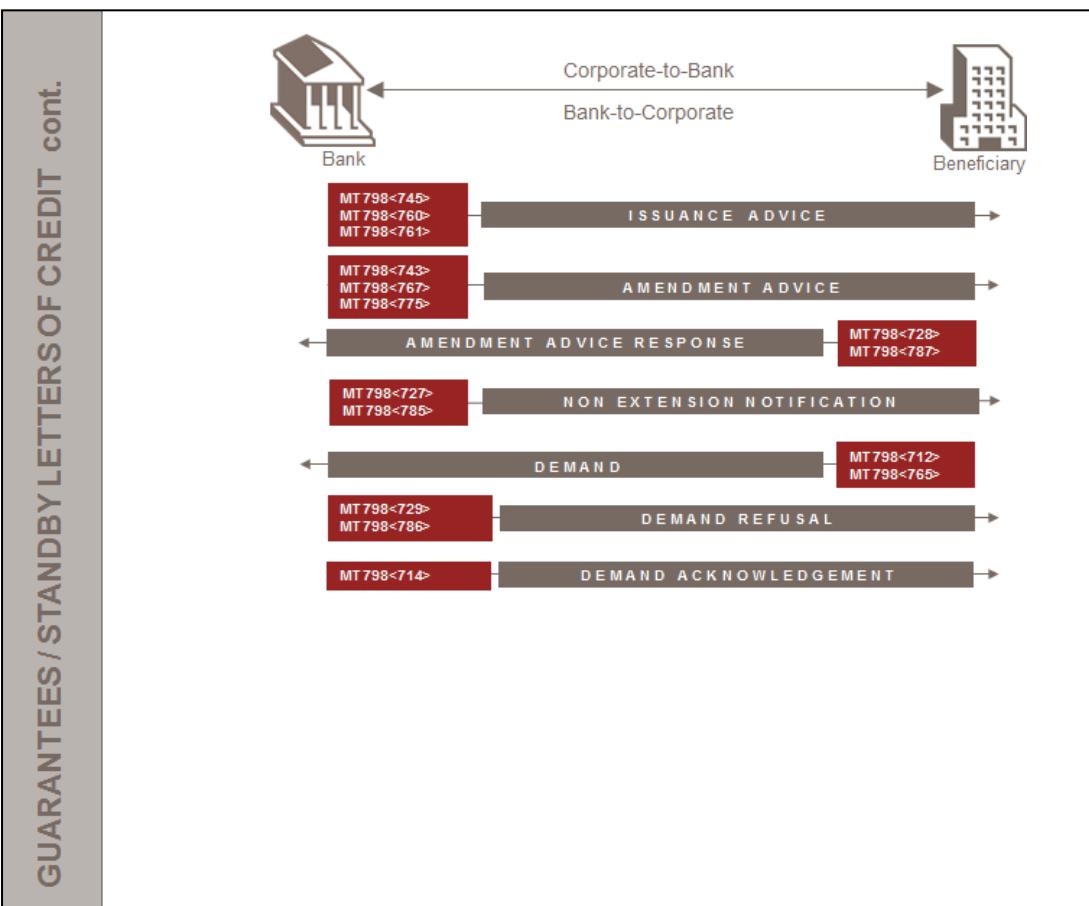
- Application for issuance of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – Corporate-to-Bank
- Notification of Draft or Issuance of a Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Request for Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – Corporate-to-Bank
- Notification of the Issue of an Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Acceptance / refusal response to a request for Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – Corporate-to-Bank
- Advice of acceptance / refusal of request for Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – Corporate-to-Bank
- Advice of issued Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Advice of amended Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Query to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Response to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – Corporate-to-Bank
- Notification of Non Extension of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – Corporate-to-Bank
- Refusal of demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Acknowledgment of demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Notification of demand for payment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – Bank-to-Corporate
- Settlement of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit claim for payment and/or charges – Bank-to-Corporate
- Request for Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Reduction / Release – Corporate-to-Bank
- Advice of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Reduction / Release – Bank-to-Corporate

The *SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit* serves as the main document describing the standards. For more information, see this handbook. In addition, the following implementation conventions apply:

- There are no network validated rules for the MT 798, nor for the enveloped message within the MT 798. In implementation, the network validated rules as specified in the latest SWIFT User Handbook for the enveloped message (e.g., MT 700 - Issue of a Documentary Credit) should be adhered to, unless otherwise stated in this section of the guide,
- Both the usage rules and usage guidelines as specified in the latest SWIFT User Handbook for the enveloped message should be adhered to, unless otherwise stated in this section of the guide.

The following diagrams depict the transaction flows:





The following table indicates the composition of the individual transaction flows:

<b>Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit</b>					
<b>MT Message Type</b>	<b>Sub-Message Type</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Max. Occur</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Base Message Type</b>
<b>Application for Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – C2B</b>					
MT 798	784	M	1	Guarantee / Standby / Undertaking Application Index	
MT 798	760	M	1	Guarantee / Standby / Undertaking Application Details	MT 760
MT 798	761	O	7	Guarantee / Standby / Undertaking Application Extension	MT 761
<b>Notification of Draft or Issue of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	762	M	1	Guarantee / Standby / Undertaking Notification of Draft or Issuance Index	
MT 798	760	M	1	Guarantee / Standby / Undertaking Notification Details	MT 760
MT 798	761	O	7	Guarantee / Standby / Undertaking Notification Extension	MT 761
<b>Request for amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – C2B</b>					
MT 798	763	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Request Index	
MT 798	767	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Request Details	MT 767
MT 798	775	O	7	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Request Extension	MT 775
<b>Notification of amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	764	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Notification Index	
MT 798	767	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Notification Details	MT 767
MT 798	775	O	7	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Request Extension	MT 775
<b>Response to Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Amendment – C2B</b>					
MT 798	728	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Acceptance/Refusal Response Index	
MT 798	787	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Acceptance/Refusal Response Details	MT 787
<b>Advice of acceptance/refusal of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Amendment – B2C</b>					
MT 798	739	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Acceptance/Refusal Advice Index	
MT 798	787	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Acceptance/Refusal Advice Details	MT 787
<b>Advice of issued Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					

MT 798	745	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Advice Index	
MT 798	760	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Advice Details	MT 760
MT 798	761	O	7	Guarantee / Standby Notification Extension	MT 761
<b>Advice of amended Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	743	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Advice Index	
MT 798	767	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Advice Details	MT 767
MT 798	775	O	7	Guarantee / Standby Amendment Request Extension	MT 775
<b>Query to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	777	M	1	Query to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Index	
MT 798	765	O	1	Query to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Details	MT 765
<b>Response to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – C2B</b>					
MT 798	778	M	1	Response to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Index	
<b>Notification of Non-Extension of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	727	M	1	Non-extension of Guarantee / Standby Notification Index	
MT 798	785	M	1	Non-extension of Guarantee / Standby Notification Details	MT 785
<b>Demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – C2B</b>					
MT 798	712	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Demand Index	
MT 798	765	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Demand Details	MT 765
<b>Demand Refusal under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	729	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Demand Refusal Index	
MT 798	786	M	1	Guarantee / Standby Demand Refusal Details	MT 786
<b>Acknowledgment of demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	714	M	1	Acknowledgment of demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Index	
<b>Notification of demand for payment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit – B2C</b>					
MT 798	779	M	1	Notification of demand for payment of Guarantee / Standby Index	
MT 798	765	O	1	Notification of demand for payment of Guarantee / Standby Details	MT 765
<b>Settlement of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit claim for payment and/or charges – B2C</b>					

MT 798	781	M	1	Settlement of Guarantee / Standby claim for payment and/or charges Index	
<b>Request for Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Reduction / Release – C2B</b>					
MT 798	783	M	1	Request for Guarantee / Standby Reduction / Release Index	
<b>Advice of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Reduction or Release – B2C</b>					
MT 798	766	M	1	Advice of Guarantee / Standby Release / Reduction Index	
MT 798	769	M	1	Advice of Guarantee / Standby Release / Reduction Details	MT 769

The following legend applies for the above table and the subsequent format and field specifications. The full rules for the notation of components inside messages and fields can be found in the SWIFT User Handbook.

<b>Legend</b>		
<b>Status</b>	M	Mandatory
	O	Optional
<b>Usage Details</b>	DEFN	Definition
	RULE	Usage Rule. Must be adhered to
	GUID	Usage Guidance. Recommended practice
	CODE	Applicable Code Values
	NOTE	Remark
<b>Format</b>	a	alphabetic, capital letters (A through Z), upper case only
	c	alpha-numeric capital letters (upper case), and digits only
	n	numeric, digits (0 through 9) only
	x	SWIFT X set: • A to Z • a to z • 0 to 9 / - ? : ( ) . , ' + SPACE CrLf
	z	SWIFT Z set: • A to Z • a to z • 0 to 9 / - ? : ( ) . , ' + SPACE CrLf = ! " % & * < > ; @ # _ {
	!	fixed length
	d	decimals, including decimal comma ',' preceding the fractional part. The fractional part may be missing, but the decimal comma must always be present
<b>Codes</b>	I	or

## 2.3.1 Application for Issuance of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit / Undertaking

### Scope

The Application for issuance of Guarantee / Standby / Undertaking is sent by the corporate (Applicant) to its bank and comprises at least two MT 798 messages.

These messages serve as a request to the bank to submit one or more draft applications for bank review or as a final draft to issue a GUARANTEE, STANDBY LETTER OF CREDIT, or a DEPENDENT UNDERTAKING (such as a surety) on behalf of the corporate and in favour of the Beneficiary. If applicable, the request may indicate that the undertaking is to be advised to the Beneficiary via a third-party bank, normally in the beneficiary's country of domicile (i.e. Advising Bank).

These messages also may serve as an instruction to the bank to issue a COUNTER-UNDERTAKING to a Corresponding Bank, requesting the Corresponding Bank to issue a local-undertaking in favour of the Beneficiary in return for its counter-liability and counter-undertaking.

### Usage

A single Request for Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit / Undertaking must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 784 and enveloping one index message. These messages contain additional data not covered in the MT 760 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 760 and enveloping one MT 760 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 760 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.
- In addition, up to a maximum of seven MT 798 messages may optionally be included, each identified with a sub-message type of 761 and enveloping one MT 761 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 761 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document.

Each MT 798 message for a single Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit / Undertaking must be identified with the same Customer Reference Number, specified as field 21A, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

## MT 798<784> - Application for issuance of Guarantee / Standby / Undertaking Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message. GUID: For MT 798<784> this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798. RULE: For MT 798<784> the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 784.
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <u>[n*78z][n*145z]</u> 1 (Text)	M	DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver. RULE: For MT 798<784> the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<784> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/3 or 1/4 or 1/5 depending on the number of 760s.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	25F	Text Purpose	5!c	M	DEFN: This field specifies whether the application text is draft or final <b>CODES:</b> DRAFT = Proposed application text to facilitate review by the applicant and the applicant's bank. The applicant's bank must not issue an undertaking based on text designated as DRAFT. FINAL = Final submission requesting/authorizing issuance of a guarantee / standby GUID: The use of DRAFT does not imply any obligation on the receiving institution to subsequently issue the undertaking.
2.5	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference.
2.6	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.7	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.

2.8	23E	Method of Transmission	4!c/[30x] (Method)(Additional Information)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the method by which the advice is to be transmitted to the Advising Bank, if applicable. It could also specify the method by which the advice of a local-undertaking is transmitted to the local Issuing Bank.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <p>TELE = BY TELECOMMUNICATION</p> <p>COUR = BY COURIER (for example, FedEx, DHL, UPS)</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;784&gt; additional information may only be used when the method is COUR to optionally specify the name of the courier.</p>
2.9	22K	Type of Undertaking	4!c/[35x] (Code)(Narrative)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the type of the requested undertaking.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <p>APAY = Advance Payment</p> <p>BILL = Bill of Lading</p> <p>CUST = Customs</p> <p>DPAY = Direct Pay</p> <p>INSU = Insurance</p> <p>JUDI = Judicial</p> <p>LEAS = Lease</p> <p>OTHR = any other undertaking type, which must be specified in narrative (2nd subfield)</p> <p>PAYM = Payment</p> <p>PERF = Performance</p> <p>RETN = Retention</p> <p>SHIP = Shipping</p> <p>TEND = Tender or Bid</p> <p>WARR = Warranty/Maintenance</p> <p>GUID: Narrative can be used to specify other characteristics using codes, for example: PUBL/PRIV for Public/Private, NAT/INTNL for National/International. Or any bilaterally agreed codes.</p>

2.10	12H	Wording of Undertaking	4!c/[35x] (Code)(Narrative)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the type of wording of the guarantee.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <p>STND = STANDARD WORDING OF ISSUING/LOCAL BANK</p> <p>WDAP = WORDING DRAFTED BY APPLICANT</p> <p>WDBF = WORDING DRAFTED BY BENEFICIARY</p> <p>OTHR = must be specified in Narrative</p> <p>GUID: If this field consists of WDAP or WDBF, field 77U of MT 798&lt;760&gt; can be used to specify the body text, or by sending a separate document referenced in 23X</p> <p>GUID: Narrative may only be used after code OTHR.</p>
2.11	22B	Special Terms	4!c (Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies any special terms that should apply to the undertaking in case that the wording of the undertaking should be the standard wording of the Issuing Bank.</p> <p>CODES</p> <p>EFCT = INCL. TERMS OF EFFECTIVENESS</p> <p>REDC = INCL. TERMS OF REDUCTION</p> <p>EFRE = INCL. TERMS OF EFFECTIVENESS AND TERMS OF REDUCTION</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;784&gt; this field may only be present if field 12H contains code STND (STANDARD WORDING OF ISSUING/LOCAL BANK)</p>
2.12	12L	Language of Standard Wording	2!c (Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the language of the standard wording of the Issuing Bank, i.e. 2 alphabetic ISO 639 Language Code, e.g., en = English, fr = French, de = German.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;784&gt; this field must be present if field 12H contains code STND (STANDARD WORDING OF ISSUING/LOCAL BANK) and must be absent if field 12H is different from STND.</p>

2.13	31S	Approximate Expiry Date	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the approximate expiry date of the undertaking (unlimited validity), i.e. the economic maturity as per the underlying transaction. RULE: For MT 798<784> this field may only be present if field 23B in MT 760 contains code OPEN.
2.14	53C	Liability Account	/34x (Account)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the number of the liability account nominated by the Applicant. GUID: For MT 798<784> for accounts serviced in countries that have implemented IBAN, the IBAN should be used to identify the account.
2.15	25A	Charges Account	/34x (Account)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the number of account nominated by the Applicant to be used for settlement of charges. GUID: For MT 798<784> for accounts serviced in countries that have implemented IBAN, the IBAN should be used to identify the account.
2.16	20E	Reference	4!c/35x (Code)(Reference)	O	DEFN: This field defines a reference associated with the undertaking. CODES: TEND = TENDER ORDR = ORDER CONT = CONTRACT OFFR = OFFER DELV = DELIVERY PINV = PROFORMA INVOICE PROJ = PROJECT
2.17	31R	Reference Date	6!n/[6!n] (Date 1)(Date 2)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date of the reference, and optionally a secondary date. RULE: For MT 798<784> subfield Date2 may only be used when field 20E consists of TEND (tender) to specify the tender closing date.
2.18	71F	Total Order/Contract Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the currency and total amount of the order/contract. RULE: For MT 798<784> the currency must be the same currency as in field 32B (Undertaking Amount) in the related details message.

2.19	37J	Undertaking Value in Percent	12d	O	DEFN: This field specifies the undertaking value in percent in relation to the total order or contract value.
2.20	49Z	Special Agreements	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates any relevant special agreements between the customer and the bank.
2.21	29A	Customer Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the corporate.
2.22	29D	Beneficiary Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the beneficiary.
2.23	29F	Local Undertaking Beneficiary Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the local-undertaking beneficiary.  RULE: For MT 798<784> this field may only be used when field 22A (Purpose of Message) in the Details Message Sequence A has a value of ISCO (Issuance of counter-undertaking and request to issue local undertaking) or ICCO (Issuance of counter counter-undertaking).
2.24	72Z	Corporate to Bank Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains additional information for the Receiver.
2.25	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.  CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel  RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.  GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files

2.26	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.27	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.28	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

**MT 798<760> - Application for issuance of Guarantee / Standby LC / Undertaking Details**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 760.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 760]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: MT 798&lt;760&gt; The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798&lt;760&gt; in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798&lt;761&gt;, e.g., 2/4, 3/4, 4/4.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 760 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer..</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 760 Message Reference Guide.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
		<b>MT 760 Message</b>			<p><b>MT 760</b> message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)</p> <p><i>Fields are listed here below for convenience</i></p>
<b>Mandatory Sequence A General Information</b>					
2.3	15A	New Sequence	Empty field	M	DEFN: This field specifies the start of mandatory sequence A General Information.
2.4	27	Sequence of Total	1!n/1!n (Number)(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the number of this message in the series of messages sent for an undertaking, and the total number of messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; this field is not validated by the bank. See 2.1 Field 27A.</p>

2.5	22A	Purpose of Message	4!c (Code)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the purpose of this message.</p> <p><b>CODES:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACNF = Advice and confirmation of issued undertaking</li> <li>ADVI = Advice of issued undertaking</li> <li>ICCO: Issuance of counter counter-undertaking and request to issue counter-undertaking</li> <li>ISCO = Issuance of counter-undertaking and request to issue local undertaking</li> <li>ISSU = Issuance of undertaking</li> </ul> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; this field specifies whether the application is a request for the issuance of an undertaking (code ISSU) or for issuance of a counter-undertaking (code ISCO) or issuance of a counter-counter-undertaking (code ICO). Codes ACNF and ADVI must not be used.</p>
2.6	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; this field is not used</p>
2.7	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name or reference.</p> <p><b>CODES:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (for example FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; this field is not used</p>
<b>End of Sequence A General Information</b>					
<b>Mandatory Sequence B Undertaking Details</b>					
2.7	15B	New Sequence	Empty field	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the start of mandatory sequence B Undertaking Details.</p> <p>GUID: As part of the Application flow, if 22A is ISCO or ICO, sequence B of MT 798&lt;760&gt; may be skipped altogether.</p>

2.8	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the unique and unambiguous undertaking identifier that is assigned by the issuer.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; this field must specify a fixed value of NONREF</p>
2.9	30	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the undertaking is issued.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; this field is not used as part of an application.</p>
2.10	22D	Form of Undertaking	4!c	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the form of the independent and irrevocable undertaking.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DGAR = Demand guarantee</li> <li>STBY = Standby letter of credit</li> <li>DEPU = Dependent undertaking</li> </ul> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; code DEPU has been added to allow the corporate to request issuance of a dependant undertaking such as a surety.</p>
2.11	40C	Applicable Rules	4!a/[35x] (Type)(Narrative)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the rules to which the undertaking is subject.</p> <p>CODES: ISPR   NONE   OTHR   UCPR   URDG</p>
2.12	23B	Expiry Type	4!c (Type)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies whether the undertaking has a specified expiry date or is open-ended or is dependent on a documentary condition.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>COND = Expiry condition</li> <li>FIXD = Specified date of expiry</li> <li>OPEN = No specified date of expiry.</li> </ul> <p>GUID: in corporate to bank communication and if field 25F is DRAFT, code NONE can be used if Applicant does not know.</p>
2.13	31E	Date of Expiry	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date when the undertaking will cease to be available.

2.14	35G	Expiry Condition/Event	12*65x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary condition/event that indicate when the undertaking will cease to be available, for example 180 days after date of required document.
2.15	50	Applicant	4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the party named in the undertaking as the applicant.
2.16	51	Obligor/Instructing Party	4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the party obligated to reimburse the issuer. RULE: For MT 798<760> this field is mandatory if different from Field 50 (Applicant).
2.17	52a	Issuer	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party that issues the undertaking (or counter-undertaking or counter-counter-undertaking).
2.18	59a	Beneficiary	<b>No letter option</b> [/34x] (Account) 4*35x (Name and Address) <b>A</b> [/34x] (Account) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party in whose favour the undertaking (or counter-undertaking or counter-counter-undertaking) is issued.
2.19	56a	Advising Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the advising bank.
2.20	23	Advising Bank Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a reference assigned by the advising bank.
2.21	57a	'Advise Through' Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies an additional bank that is requested to advise the undertaking.
2.22	32B	Undertaking Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the currency and the amount of the undertaking.

2.23	<u>39D</u>	<u>Additional Amount Information</u>	<u>12*65z (Narrative)</u>	Ø	<p>DEFN: This field contains information about the additional amounts related to the undertaking, for example, interests, tolerances.</p> <p>Usage guideline: minus/plus tolerance can be specified as 2n/2n</p>
2.23	<u>39F</u>	<u>Supplementary Information About Amount</u>	<u>12*65z (Narrative)</u>	Ø	<p>DEFN: This field contains supplementary information about amount related to the undertaking. The information can be optionally provided using codes.</p> <p><u>CODES:</u></p> <p><u>ADAM</u> = Additional Amount (Specifies additional amount not included in field 32B amount).</p> <p><u>INFO</u> = Specific Information (Specific information about the undertaking amount specified in field 32B.)</p> <p><u>INTR</u> = Interest (A value (amount or percentage rate) in addition to the undertaking amount specified in field 32B.)</p> <p><u>MUCU</u> = Multi-Currency (In case of multi-currency undertakings, specifies an amount in a different currency. It must be stated how this amount is to be interpreted against field 32B. The value(s) coded with 'MUCU' and accompanying narrative are left to user discretion, taking note that it must be stated in the narrative how the 'MUCU' amount is to be interpreted against field 32B.)</p> <p><u>TOLR</u> = Plus/Minus Tolerance (Specified as 2n/2n.)</p> <p><u>GUID</u>: Any code used in this field must be between slashes and must appear at the beginning of a line.</p> <p><u>Continuation of additional information must begin with either codes (in between slashes) or narrative information within double slashes '  '.</u></p>
2.24	41a	Available With ...	<b>F</b> 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>G</b> 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the bank with which the credit is available (the place for presentation)</p> <p>RULE: may not be used if form of undertaking is DGAR</p>

2.25	71D	Charges	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains information about the charges associated with the undertaking, for example "Confirmation charges are for account of beneficiary".
2.26	45C	Presentation Instructions	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the presentation instructions (for example, form and/or place of presentation) including documents required to make a complying demand.
2.27	77U	Undertaking Terms and Conditions	150*65z (Narrative)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the applicable terms and conditions of the undertaking that are not already mentioned in any other field in this message. GUID: this field should not be used in case of application for counter-local guarantee.
2.28	49	Confirmation Instructions	7!x (Instruction)	O	DEFN: This field contains confirmation instructions from the issuing bank to the advising party. CODES: CONFIRM = The requested confirmation party is requested to confirm the credit MAY ADD = The requested confirmation party may add its confirmation to the credit WITHOUT = No confirmation is requested
2.29	58a	Requested Confirmation Party	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the party requested to add its confirmation to the undertaking. GUID: this field should not be used by the Applicant except if there is specific requirement to have the credit confirmed by this party.
<u>2.30</u>	<u>44J</u>	<u>Governing Law/Jurisdiction</u>	<u>2!a[/35x]</u> <u>[/65x]</u> <u>(Country Code)(Country Sub Division)</u> <u>(Narrative)</u>	<u>O</u>	<u>DEFN: This field specifies the governing law (as an ISO 3166-1 code in Country Code and optionally, country subdivision). This field may also specify the place of jurisdiction (in narrative) that is applicable to the undertaking.</u>

2.30	44H	Governing Law and/or Place of Jurisdiction	2!a[65x] (Country Code)(Narrative)	O	<b>DEFN:</b> This field specifies the governing law (as an ISO 3166-1 code in Country Code) and/or place of jurisdiction (in Narrative, optionally) that is applicable to the undertaking.
2.31	23F	Automatic Extension Period	4!a[35x] (Period)	O	DEFN: This field contains details about the automatic extension of the expiry date.  CODES: DAYS = Number of calendar days after latest expiry date ONEY = Same date one year later OTHR = Other extension clause
2.32	78	Automatic Extension Non-Extension Notification	12*65x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains details about the non-extension to the automatic expiry date extension, such as notification method, and notification recipient details.
2.33	26E	Automatic Extension Notification Period	3n	O	DEFN: This field specifies the minimum number of calendar days prior to the current expiry date by which notice of non-extension must be sent.
2.34	31S	Automatic Extension Final Expiry Date	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the final expiry date after which the undertaking will no longer be subject to automatic extension.
2.35	48B	Demand Indicator	4!c (Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies if partial and/or multiple demands are not permitted.  CODES: NMLT = Multiple demands not permitted NMPT = Multiple and partial demands not permitted NPRT = Partial demands not permitted
2.36	48D	Transfer Indicator	4!c (Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies that the undertaking is transferable.  CODES: TRAN = The undertaking is transferable.
2.37	39E	Transfer Conditions	12*65z	O	DEFN: This field specifies transfer conditions, if more details are needed than the indicator.
2.38	45L	Underlying Transaction Details	50*65z (Narrative)	M	DEFN: This field specifies concise details of the underlying business transaction for which the undertaking is issued.  NOTE: This field is optional in the MT 760 Message Reference Guide.

2.39	24E	Delivery of Original Undertaking	4!c/[35x] (Code)(Additional Information)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the method by which the original undertaking is to be delivered.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>COLL = By Collection</li> <li>COUR = By Courier (e.g., Fedex, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>MAIL = By Mail</li> <li>MESS = By Messenger - Hand-deliver</li> <li>OTHR = Other method</li> <li>REGM = By Registered Mail or Airmail</li> </ul>
2.40	24G	Delivery to/ Collection By	4!c <u>[6*35x]</u> <u>[12*65]</u> <u>z]</u> (Code) <u>(Name And AddressNarrative)</u>	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies to whom the original undertaking is to be delivered or by whom the original local undertaking is to be collected.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BENE = Beneficiary</li> <li>OTHR = Specified Address</li> </ul>
<b>End of Sequence B Undertaking Details</b>					
<b>Optional Sequence C Local Undertaking Details</b>					
2.41	15C	New Sequence	Empty field	M	DEFN: This field specifies the start of optional sequence C Local Undertaking Details.
2.42	31C	Requested Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date on or by which the requested local undertaking is to be issued.
2.43	22D	Form of Undertaking	4!c	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the form of local undertaking (independent or dependent).</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DGAR = Demand guarantee</li> <li>STBY = Standby letter of credit</li> <li>DEPU = Dependent undertaking</li> </ul>
2.44	40C	Applicable Rules	4!a/[35x] (Type)(Narrative)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the rules to which the local undertaking is subject.</p> <p>CODES: ISPR   NONE   OTHR   UCPR   URDG</p>

2.45	22K	Type of Undertaking	4!c[35x] (Type)(Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the type of the local undertaking.</p> <p><b>CODES:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>APAY = Advance Payment</li> <li>BILL = Bill of Lading</li> <li>CUST = Customs</li> <li>DPAY = Direct Pay</li> <li>INSU = Insurance</li> <li>JUDI = Judicial</li> <li>LEAS = Lease</li> <li>OTHR = Any other local undertaking type which must be specified in narrative</li> <li>PAYM = Payment</li> <li>PERF = Performance</li> <li>RETN = Retention</li> <li>SHIP = Shipping</li> <li>TEND = Tender or Bid</li> <li>WARR = Warranty/Maintenance</li> </ul>
2.46	23B	Expiry Type	4!c (Type)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies whether the local undertaking has a specified expiry date or is open-ended or is dependent on a documentary condition.</p> <p><b>CODES:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>COND = Expiry condition</li> <li>FIXD = Specified date of expiry</li> <li>OPEN = No specified date of expiry.</li> </ul> <p>GUID: in corporate to bank communication and if field 25F is DRAFT, code NONE can be used if Applicant does not know.</p>
2.47	31E	Date of Expiry	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date when the local undertaking will cease to be available.
2.48	35G	Expiry Condition/Event	12*65x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary condition/event that indicates when the local undertaking will cease to be available, for example 180 days after date of required document.
2.49	50	Applicant	4*35x (Name and Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party named in the undertaking as the applicant.

2.50	51	Obligor/Instructing Party	4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: <u>This field specifies the party obligated to reimburse the issuer of the counter-undertaking.</u> <u>This field specifies the party other than the applicant, that gives instructions to issue a counter-undertaking and is responsible for indemnifying the issuer of the counter-undertaking. Also applicable to counter-counter undertaking.</u>
2.51	52a	Issuer	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the party that issues the local undertaking.
2.52	59	Beneficiary	[/34x] (Account) 4*35x (Name and Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party in whose favour the local undertaking is issued.
2.53	32B	Undertaking Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the currency and the amount of the local undertaking.
<b>2.54</b>	<b>39D</b>	<b>Additional Amount Information</b>	<b>12*65z (Narrative)</b>	<b>Q</b>	<b>DEFN:</b> <u>This field contains information about the additional amounts related to the undertaking, for example, interests, tolerances.</u>
<b>2.54</b>	<b>39F</b>	<b>Supplementary Information About Amount</b>	<b>12*65z (Narrative)</b>	<b>Q</b>	<b>DEFN:</b> <u>This field contains supplementary information about amount related to the local undertaking. The information can be optionally provided using codes.</u>  <b><u>CODES:</u></b>  <u>ADAM = Additional Amount (Specifies additional amount not included in field 32B amount).</u> <u>INFO = Specific Information (Specific information about the undertaking amount specified in field 32B.)</u> <u>INTR = Interest (A value (amount or percentage rate) in addition to the undertaking amount specified in field 32B.)</u> <u>MUCU = Multi-Currency (In case of multi-currency undertakings, specifies an amount in a different currency. It must be stated how this amount is to be interpreted against field 32B. The value(s) coded with 'MUCU' and accompanying narrative are left to user discretion, taking note that it must be stated in the narrative how the 'MUCU' amount is to be interpreted against field 32B.)</u> <u>TOLR = Plus/Minus Tolerance (Specified as</u>

					<u>2n/2n.)</u> GUID: Any code used in this field must be between slashes and must appear at the beginning of a line. Continuation of additional information must begin with either codes (in between slashes) or narrative information within double slashes '//'.  
<u>2.55</u>	<u>57a</u>	'Advise Through' Bank	<u>A [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier)</u> <u>4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)</u> <u>D [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier)</u> <u>4*35x</u> <u>(Name &amp; Address)</u>	O	DEFN: This field specifies an additional bank that is requested to advise the local undertaking.
<u>2.562</u> <u>55</u>	71D	Charges	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains information about the charges associated with the local undertaking, for example "Confirmation charges are for account of beneficiary".
<u>2.572</u> <u>56</u>	41a	Available With ...	<b>F</b> 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>G</b> 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the bank with which the credit is available (the place for presentation) RULE: may not be used if form of undertaking is DGAR
<u>2.582</u> <u>57</u>	45C	Presentation Instructions	100*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the instructions (for example, form and/or place of presentation) including documents required to make a complying demand.
<u>2.592</u> <u>58</u>	77L	Requested Local Undertaking Terms and Conditions	150*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the requested terms and conditions of the local undertaking.
<u>2.602</u> <u>59</u>	22Y	Standard Wording Required	4!c (Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies that the wording of the terms and conditions must be the standard wording of the local undertaking issuer. CODES: STND = Standard wording of issuer required
<u>2.60</u> <u>2.61</u>	40D	Standard Wording Requested Language	2!a (Language Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the requested ISO 639 language code for the wording of the local undertaking.

<u>2.61</u>	44H	Governing Law and/or Place of Jurisdiction	2!a[65x] (Country Code)(Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the governing law (as an ISO 3166-1 code in Country Code) and/or place of jurisdiction (in Narrative, optionally) that is applicable to the local undertaking.
<u>2.62</u>	44J	Governing Law/Jurisdiction	2!a[35x] I/65x (Country Code)(Country Sub Division) (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the governing law (as an ISO 3166-1 code in Country Code and optionally, country subdivision). This field may also specify the place of jurisdiction (in narrative) that is applicable to the local undertaking.
<u>2.63</u> <u>62</u>	23F	Automatic Extension Period	4!a[35x] (Period)	O	DEFN: This field contains details about the automatic extension of the expiry date.  CODES: DAYS = Number of calendar days after latest expiry date ONEY = Same date one year later OTHR = Other extension clause
<u>2.64</u> <u>63</u>	78	Automatic Extension Non-Extension Notification	12*65x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies information related to the non-extension to the automatic expiry date extension, such as notification method, and notification recipient details.
<u>2.65</u> <u>64</u>	26E	Automatic Extension Notification Period	3n	O	DEFN: This field specifies the minimum number of calendar days prior to the current expiry date by which notice of non-extension must be sent.
<u>2.66</u> <u>65</u>	31S	Automatic Extension Final Expiry Date	6In (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the final expiry date after which the local undertaking will no longer be subject to automatic extension.
<u>2.67</u> <u>66</u>	48B	Demand Indicator	4!c (Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies whether partial and/or multiple demands are not permitted.  CODES: NMLT = Multiple demands not permitted NMPT = Multiple and partial demands not permitted NPRT = Partial demands not permitted
<u>2.68</u> <u>67</u>	48D	Transfer Indicator	4!c (Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies that the local undertaking is transferable.  CODES: TRAN = The undertaking is transferable.
<u>2.69</u> <u>68</u>	39E	Transfer Conditions	12*65z	O	DEFN: This field specifies transfer conditions, if more details are needed than the indicator.
<u>2.69</u> <u>70</u>	45L	Underlying Transaction Details	50*65z (Narrative)	M	DEFN: This field specifies concise details of the underlying business transaction for which the local undertaking is issued.

2.7 <del>10</del>	24E	Delivery of Original Undertaking	4!c[35x] (Code)(Additional Information)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the method by which the original local undertaking is to be delivered.  CODES: COLL = By Collection COUR = By Courier (e.g., Fedex, DHL, UPS) MAIL = By Mail MESS = By Messenger - Hand-deliver OTHR = Other method REGM = By Registered Mail or Airmail
2.7 <del>24</del>	24G	Delivery To/Collection By	4!c (Code) <del>[6*35x12*65z]</del> ( <u>Name And AddressNarrative</u> )	O	DEFN: This field specifies to whom the original local undertaking is to be delivered or by whom the original local undertaking is to be collected.  CODES: BENE = Beneficiary OTHR = Specified Address
<b>End of Sequence C Local Undertaking Details</b>					

### MT 760 Network Validated Rules

**C1** In sequence B, if field 23B is FIXD then field 31E must be present, if field 23B is COND then field 31E may be present, otherwise field 31E is not allowed (Error code(s): E01).

In sequence C, if field 23B is FIXD then field 31E must be present, if field 23B is COND then field 31E may be present, otherwise field 31E is not allowed (Error code(s): E01).

**C2** In sequence B, if field 23B is COND then field 35G must be present otherwise field 35G is not allowed (Error code(s): E02). In sequence C, if field 23B is COND then field 35G must be present otherwise field 35G is not allowed (Error code(s): E02).

**C3** In sequence B, if field 23B is OPEN then fields 35G, 23F, 78, 26E and 31S are not allowed (Error code(s): E03). In sequence C, if field 23B is OPEN then fields 35G, 23F, 78, 26E and 31S are not allowed (Error code(s): E03).

**C4** In sequence A, if field 22A is ISSU then, in sequence B, field 50 must be present (Error code(s): C17).

**C5** In sequence A, if field 22A is ISSU and, in sequence B, field 22D is STBY then, in sequence B, field 49 must be present; if field 22D is DGAR, then field 49 is not allowed (Error code(s): C18).

**C6** In sequence A, if field 22A is ISCO or ICCO then, in sequence B, fields 48D, 24E and 24G are not allowed (Error code(s): C19).

**C7** In sequence B, if field 57a is present then field 56a must also be present (Error code(s): C81).

**C8** In sequence B, if field 23F is absent then fields 78, 26E, and 31S are not allowed (Error code(s): C16). In sequence C, if field 23F is absent then fields 78, 26E, and 31S are not allowed (Error code(s): C16).

**C9** In sequence B, if field 49 is CONFIRM or field 49 is MAY ADD then field 58a must be present, otherwise field 58a is not allowed (Error code(s): C20).

**C10** In sequence C, if field 22Y is present then field 22K must be present (Error code(s): C33).

**C11** In sequence B, if field 22D is DGAR, then field 41a is not allowed (Error code(s): C21).

| In sequence C, if field 22D is DGAR or DEPU, then field 41a is not allowed (Error code(s): C21).

## MT 798<761> - Application for issuance of Guarantee / Standby LC / Undertaking Extension

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message. GUID: For MT 798<761> this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798. RULE: For MT 798<761> the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 761.
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver. RULE: For MT 798<761> the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.

Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 761]					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;761&gt; the message index number must start with a value of 3 for the first MT 798&lt;761&gt; in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798&lt;761&gt;, e.g., 3/4, 4/4, or 3/5, 4/5, 5/5.</p> <p>NOTE: field is not present in the MT 761 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer..</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 761 Message Reference Guide.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
2.3	27	Sequence of Total	1!n/1!n (Number)(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the number of this message in the series of messages sent for a documentary credit, and the total number of messages in the series.</p> <p>NOTE: A maximum of seven MT 798&lt;761&gt;s are permitted.</p>
2.4	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the unique and unambiguous undertaking identifier that is assigned by the issuer.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;761&gt; this field must specify a fixed value of NONREF</p>
2.5	52a	Issuer	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party that issues the undertaking (or counter-undertaking).

2.6	77U	Undertaking Terms and Conditions	150*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the applicable terms and conditions of the undertaking. RULE: For MT 798<761> At least one of the fields 77U or 77L must be present.
2.7	77L	Requested Local Undertaking Terms and Conditions	150*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the requested terms and conditions of the local undertaking. RULE: For MT 798<761> At least one of the fields 77U or 77L must be present.

### MT 761 Network Validated Rules

**C1** Either fields 77U or 77L must be present, both may be present (Error code(s): C19).

## Business Example - 1

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the application requested.

### Narrative

Pumpen AG, Postfach 123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY has signed a contract with Mining Ltd., Main Road, Oslo, NORWAY regarding the delivery of pumps and equipment.

The contract is comprised of the following:

Contract Number: ABC123

Contract Date: 5th February 2020

Total Contract Amount: EUR 500.000,00

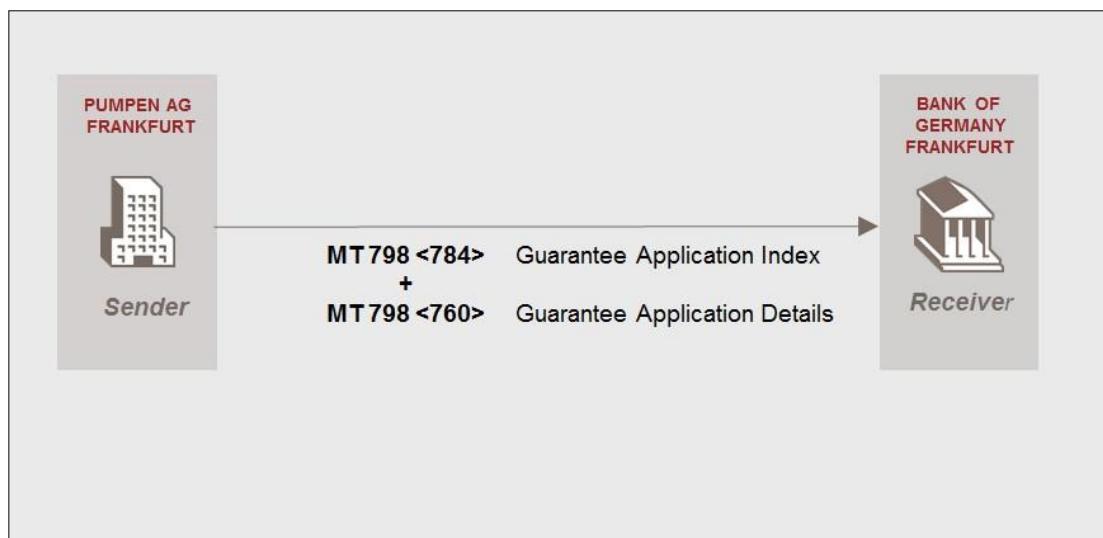
It has been agreed between the Buyer and the Seller that the Seller needs to provide a standard Performance Guarantee for 10 % of the total contract value valid until the 31st December 2020.

On 5th May 2020 Pumpen AG instructs its bank, i.e. Bank of Germany AG in Frankfurt to issue a standard Performance Guarantee in English in favour of the buyer.

The guarantee should be delivered to the Beneficiary by registered mail or airmail.

The seller's contact is John Sixpack and the reference number for this transaction is XYZ999

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;784&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	PUMPCORP
Message Type	798
Receiver	BOGEDEFFXXX
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:FGH96372
Sub-message type	:12:784
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21A:XYZ999-123 :21T:XYZ999 :25F:FINAL :13E:202005051433 :22K:PERF :12H:STND :40D:EN :20E:CONT/ABC123 :31R:200205 :71F:EUR50000, :37J:10, :29A:John Sixpack

<b>SWIFT Message - 2 MT 798 &lt;760&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	PUMPCORP
Message Type	798
Receiver	BOGEDEFFXXX
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:FGH96373
Sub-message type	:12:760
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21A:XYZ999-123 :15A: :27:1/1 :22A:ISSU :15B: :20:NONREF :30:200505 :22D:DGAR :40C:NONE :23B:FIXD :31E:201231 :50:Pumpen AG Postfach 123 60599 Frankfurt / GERMANY :52A:BOGEDEFFXXX :59D:Mining Ltd. Main Road Oslo / NORWAY :32B:EUR50000, :77U:STANDARD WORDING :24E:REGM :24G:BENE

## 2.3.2 Notification of Draft or Issue of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit / Undertaking

### Scope

The Notification of Draft or Issue of Guarantee / Standby LC / Undertaking is sent to the corporate by its bank and comprises at least two MT 798 messages. It may be used in the following scenarios:

- To provide a draft to the applicant
- To notify the applicant that a Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit / Undertaking has been issued
- To notify the applicant that a request to a third bank for the issuance of a Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit / Undertaking has been initiated

### Usage

A single Notification of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit / Undertaking must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 762 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 760 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 760 and enveloping one MT 760 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 760 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.
- In addition, up to a maximum of seven MT 798 messages may optionally be included, each identified with a sub-message type of 761 and enveloping one MT 761 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 761 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document.

Each MT 798 message for a single Notification of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit / Undertaking must be identified with the Customer Number, specified as field 21A, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

### Sequence of Notification Messages

The Notification of the Issue of, a Guarantee / Standby LC / Undertaking is a message that is sent by the issuing bank to the applicant on issuance.

Following this notification, additional information related to the issuance such as that received in the MT 768 (Acknowledgement of a Guarantee / Standby LC Message) indicating acceptance or rejection by the beneficiary, should be notified by the issuing bank to the applicant in the MT 798<789> + MT 798<799> messages. The guarantee/ Standby LC number / Undertaking must be specified in field 20 (Transaction Reference Number) of the MT 798<799>.

## MT 798<762> - Notification of Guarantee / Standby LC / Undertaking Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;762&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;762&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 762.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;762&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<762> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/3
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field is used to specify the request reference number as assigned by the corporate in the request.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.5	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.6	20	Undertaking Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank. RULE: For MT 798<762>, if field 25F is FINAL, this field is mandatory otherwise this field must not be used.
2.7	25F	Text Purpose	5!c	M	DEFN: This field specifies whether the application text is draft or final  CODES:  DRAFT = Proposed application text to facilitate review by the applicant and the applicant's bank. The applicant's bank has not issued an undertaking based on text designated as DRAFT.  FINAL = Notification of issuance of a guarantee / standby LC

2.8	12K	Draft Text Version	2!n (Number)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the sequential version number of a draft, assigned by the bank. RULE: Must not be present if 25F is FINAL.
2.9	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.10	49Z	Special Agreements	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates any special agreements between the Customer and the bank for the specified .
2.11	29B	Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the bank.
2.12	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains additional information for the Receiver.
2.13	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name. CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute. GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.
2.14	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

2.15	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.16	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

## MT 798<760> - Notification of Guarantee / Standby LC / Undertaking Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 760.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 760]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: MT 798<760> The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798<760> in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798<760>, e.g., 2/3. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 760 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 760 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 760 Message</b>		M	MT 760 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)
<b>Note</b>	22D	Form of Undertaking	4!c		DEFN: This field specifies the form of the independent undertaking. CODES: DGAR = Demand guarantee STBY = Standby letter of credit DEPU = Dependent undertaking RULE: For MT 798<760> code DEPU has been added to allow the bank to confirm issuance of a dependant undertaking such as a surety.

## MT 798<761> - Notification of Guarantee / Standby LC / Undertaking Extension

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;761&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;761&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 761.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;761&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 761]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: MT 798<760> The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798<760> in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798<760>, e.g., 2/3. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 761 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 761 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 761 Message</b>		M	MT 761 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)

## Business Example - 1

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the application requested.

### Narrative

Pumpen AG, Postfach 123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY has signed a contract with Mining Ltd., Main Road, Bangkok, THAILAND regarding the delivery of pumps and equipment.

The contract is comprised of the following:

Contract Number: ABC456

Contract Date: 5th March 2020

Total Contract Amount: EUR 700.000,00

It has been agreed between the Buyer and the Seller, that the Seller needs to provide a standard Performance Guarantee for 10 % of the total contract value valid until the 31st December 2020, through the Buyer's local bank in Thailand, Bangkok Bank.

On 11th May 2020 Pumpen AG instructs its bank, i.e. Bank of Germany AG in Frankfurt to request the issuance by Bangkok Bank of a standard Performance Guarantee in English in favour of the buyer.

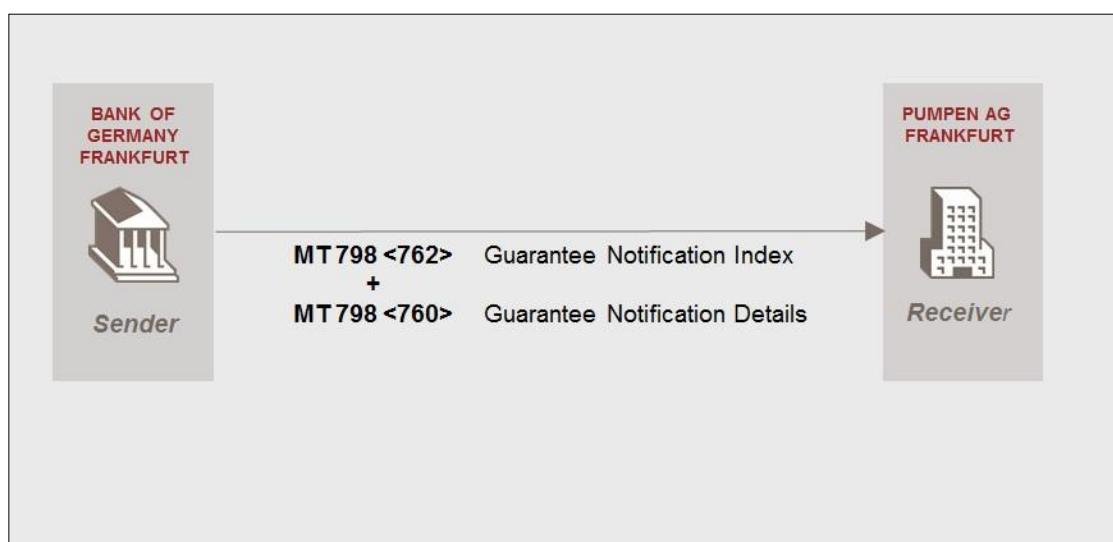
The guarantee should be delivered to the Beneficiary by registered mail or airmail.

The seller's contact is John Sixpack and the reference number for this transaction is XYZ888.

The Bank of Germany issues a counter-guarantee to Bangkok Bank including a request to issue a local demand guarantee.

The Bank of Germany provides a notification of issuance to the applicant, Pumpen AG.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;762&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:BOG456873
Sub-message type	:12:762
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21A:XZZ888-123 :21T:XZZ888 :21P:ABC66578-123 :21S:ABC66578 :20:PGFFA0765 :25F:FINAL :13E:202005111501 :22K:PERF

<b>SWIFT Message - 2 MT 798 &lt;760&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:BOG456874
Sub-message type	:12:760

Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:ABC66578-123 :15A: :27:1/1 :22A:ISCO :15B: :20:PGFFA0765 :30:200511 :22D:DGAR :40C:URDG :23B:FIXD :31E:210108 :51:Pumpen AG Postfach 123 60599 Frankfurt / GERMANY :52A:BOGEDEFFXXX :59D:BANGKOK BANK BANG RAK DISTRICT BANGKOK 10500 THAILAND :32B:EUR70000,
---------------------	--

Proprietary message continued	<p>:77U: In consideration of your issuing your guaranteeas defined herein we hereby give you our irrevocable counter guarantee and undertake to pay you any sum or sums not exceeding in total the undertaking amount as defined in this counter-guarantee on presentation of your first demand. Such demand shall be supported by your written statement that you have received a demand for payment under your guarantee in accordance with its terms and Article 20 of the Uniform Rules for Demand Guarantees, ICC publication No. 758.</p> <p>:15C: :31C:150518 :22D:DGAR :40C:URDG :22K:PERF :23B:FIXD :31E:151231 :50:Pumpen AG Postfach 123 60599 Frankfurt / GERMANY :52A:BKKBTHBK :59:Thailand Minerals and Mining. Ratchadaphisek 21 Huai Khwang, Bangkok 10310 THAILAND :32B:EUR70000, :45L:We have been informed that Pumpen AG, Postfach 123,60599 Frankfurt, Germany, has entered into contract No. ABC456 dated 5th March 2015 with Mining Ltd., Main Road, Bangkok, Thailand, for the supply and delivery of pumps and equipment. Furthermore we understand that, under the conditions of contract, a performance guarantee is required. It has been agreed between the Buyer and the Seller, that the Seller needs to provide a standard Performance Guarantee for 10 percent of the total contract value, EUR 700000 valid until the 31st December 2015, through the Buyer s local bank in Thailand, Bangkok Bank.</p> <p>:24E:COUR :24G:BENE</p>
-------------------------------	--

## Business Example - 2

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the application requested.

### Narrative

On 6th May 2020 Bank of Germany AG in Frankfurt issues its Performance Guarantee number PGFFA0815 based on the previously given instructions by Pumpen AG, Postfach 123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY and in favour of Mining Ltd., Main Road, Oslo, NORWAY with the following details:

Performance Guarantee No . PGFFA0815

We have been informed that you, Mining PLC, Main Road, Oslo NORWAY, hereinafter called the BUYER have concluded the contract No. ABC123 of 05th February 2020, hereinafter called the CONTRACT, with Pumpen AG, Postfach 123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY, hereinafter called the SELLER, according to which the SELLER will deliver to the BUYER pumps and equipment, in the total value of EUR 500.000,00.

As agreed the SELLER has to provide a bank guarantee in favour of the BUYER, amounting to 10 percent of the total value, i.e. EUR 50.000,00 , to cover the fulfilment of the SELLER's obligations under the CONTRACT.

In consideration of the aforesaid, we, Bank of Germany Aktiengesellschaft, Frankfurt, Germany, hereby issue the guarantee on behalf of the SELLER towards the BUYER to the maximum amount of

EUR 50.000,00 (in words: EUR fifty thousand 00/100)

and undertake irrevocably without consideration of any objections and defences of the SELLER or third parties and irrespective of the validity and legal effect of the CONTRACT and waiving any objections arising there from to pay to the BUYER any amount claimed from us by the BUYER up to the maximum amount of this guarantee upon receipt of the BUYER's first demand in writing, in which the BUYER simultaneously confirms

that the SELLER is in breach of its obligations towards the BUYER under the CONTRACT.

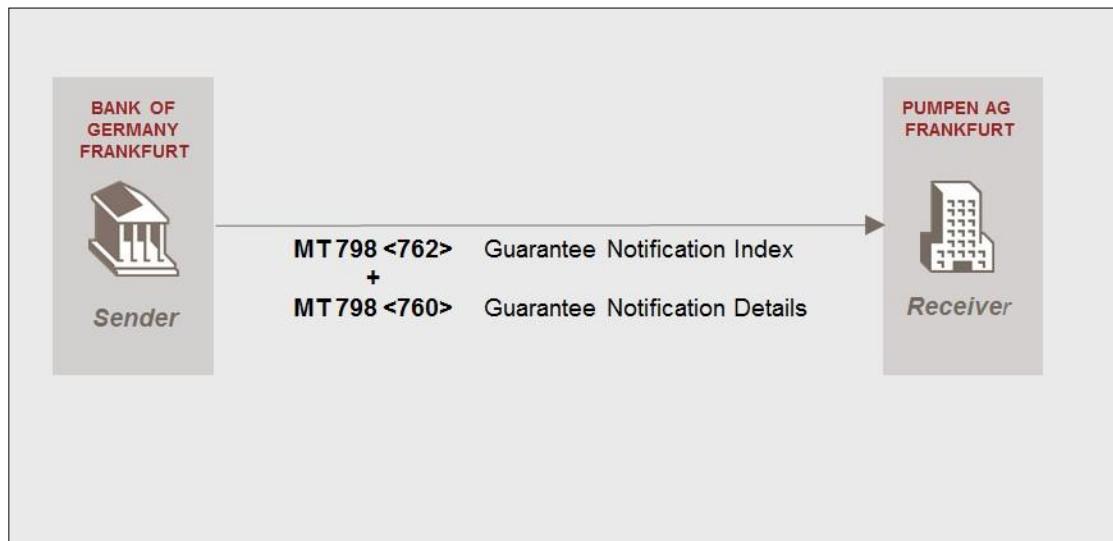
The obligation under this guarantee shall expire on 31st December 2020.

Any claim for payment complying with the above conditions must be received by us within the validity period of this guarantee.

This guarantee shall be governed by the law of the Federal Republic of Germany. Exclusive place of jurisdiction shall be Frankfurt (Main) GERMANY.

On the same day Bank of Germany notifies the Applicant (i.e. Pumpen AG) about the issuance of the guarantee.

Bank of Germany's contact is Arthur Dent.

**Information Flow****SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;762&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:BVC96372
Sub-message type	:12:762
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21A:XYZ999-123 :21T:XYZ999 :21P:ABC66578-123 :21S:ABC66578 :20:PGFFA0815 :25F:FINAL :13E:202005061033 :29B:Arthur Dent

<b>SWIFT Message - 2 MT 798 &lt;760&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:BVC96372
Sub-message type	:12:760

Proprietary message	<p>:77E:      :27A:2/2      :21P:ABC66578-123      :15A:      :27:1/1      :22A:ISSU      :15B:      :20:PGFFA0815      :30:200506      :22D:DGAR      :40C:NONE      :23B:FIXD      :31E:201231      :50:Pumpen AG      Postfach 123      60599 Frankfurt / GERMANY      :52A:BOGEDEFFXXX      :59:Mining Ltd.      Main Road      Oslo / NORWAY      :32B:EUR50000,      :77U:We have been informed that you, Mining PLC, Main Road, Oslo      Main Road, Oslo NORWAY, hereinafter called the BUYER have      concluded the contract No. ABC123 of 05th February 2020,      hereinafter called the CONTRACT, with Pumpen AG, Postfach      123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY, hereinafter called the SELLER,      according to which the SELLER will deliver to the BUYER pumps      and equipment, in the total value of EUR 500.000,00.      As agreed the SELLER has to provide a bank guarantee in favour      of the BUYER, amounting to 10 percent of the total value, i.e.      EUR 50.000,00 to cover the fulfilment of the SELLER's      obligations under the CONTRACT.      In consideration of the aforesaid, we, Bank of Germany      Aktiengesellschaft, Frankfurt, Germany, hereby issue the      guarantee on behalf of the SELLER towards the BUYER to the      maximum amount of EUR 50.000,00 (in words: EUR fifty      thousand 00/100) and undertake irrevocably without</p>
---------------------	---

	<p>and legal effect of the CONTRACT and waiving any objections</p> <p>arising there from to pay to the BUYER any amount claimed from</p> <p>us by the BUYER up to the maximum amount of this guarantee upon</p> <p>receipt of the BUYER's first demand in writing, in which the</p> <p>BUYER simultaneously confirms that the SELLER is in breach of its obligations towards the BUYER under the CONTRACT.</p> <p>This guarantee shall be governed by the law of the Federal Republic of Germany. Exclusive place of jurisdiction shall be</p> <p>Frankfurt (Main) GERMANY.</p>
--	---

### 2.3.3 Request for Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit

#### Scope

The Request for Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit is sent by the corporate to its bank and comprises at least two MT 798 messages.

These messages are used to request the bank to issue an amendment to a GUARANTEE, STANDBY LETTER OF CREDIT, or a DEPENDENT UNDERTAKING (such as a surety) previously issued on behalf of the Applicant.

These messages may also be used to instruct the bank to issue a request to a Corresponding Bank to issue an amendment to a previously issued local undertaking in return for its counter-liability and counter undertaking.

#### Usage

A single Request for Amendment Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 763 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 767 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 767 and enveloping one MT 767 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 767 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.
- In addition, up to a maximum of seven MT 798 messages may optionally be included, each identified with a sub-message type of 775 and enveloping one MT 775 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 775 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document.

Each MT 798 message for a single Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit must be identified with the same Customer Reference Number, specified as field 21A, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

## MT 798<763> - Request for Amendment of Guarantee / Standby LC Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;763&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;763&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 763.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;763&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<763> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/3.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank.
2.5	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.6	23E	Method of Transmission	4!c[30x] (Method)(Additional Information)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the method by which the amendment is to be transmitted to the Advising Bank, if applicable. It could also specify the method by which the request to amendment of a local-undertaking is transmitted to the local Issuing Bank.  CODES: TELE = BY TELECOMMUNICATION COUR = BY COURIER (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) RULE: For MT 798<763> additional information may only be used when the method is COUR to optionally specify the name of the courier.
2.7	49Z	Special Agreements	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates any special agreements between the Customer and the bank for the specified .
2.8	29A	Customer Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the corporate.

2.9	72Z	Corporate to Bank Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains additional information for the Receiver.
2.10	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.11	26E	Number of Amendment	3n (Number)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the number which identifies this amendment.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;763&gt; this number must be the same as field 26E in the accompanying MT 798&lt;767&gt;.</p>
2.12	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.13	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

2.14	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
------	-----	----------------------	-------------------------------------	---	--

## MT 798<767> - Request for Amendment of Guarantee / Standby LC Details

Section 1 – MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.  GUID: For MT 798<767> this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).  RULE: For MT 798<767> the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 767.
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.  RULE: For MT 798<767> the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 767]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: MT 798<767> The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798<767> in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798<775>, e.g., 2/3. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 767 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 767 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
		<b>MT 767 Message</b>		M	MT 767 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) Fields listed before for convenience
<b>Mandatory Sequence A General Information</b>					
2.3	15A	New Sequence	Empty field	M	DEFN: This field specifies the start of mandatory sequence A General Information.
2.4	27	Sequence of Total	1!n/1!n (Number)(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the number of this message in the series of messages sent for an undertaking amendment, and the total number of messages in the series.

2.5	21	Related Reference	16x	O	<p>DEFN: If the Receiver of this message has previously sent an MT 768 Acknowledgement of a Guarantee Message or its equivalent, this field contains the contents of field 20 Transaction Reference Number of the acknowledgement.</p> <p>If no acknowledgement has been previously received, this field will contain a reference which is meaningful to the Receiver, for example, the guarantee number.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;767&gt; this field is not used</p>
2.6	22A	Purpose of Message	4!c (Code)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the purpose of this message.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <p>ICCA: Request issuance of amendment to issued counter counter-undertaking and/or request to issue amendment to counter-undertaking and localundertaking</p> <p>ISCA = Request issuance of amendment to issued counter-undertaking and/or request to issue amendment to local undertaking</p> <p>ISUA = Request issuance of amendment to issued undertaking</p>
2.7	23S	Cancellation Request	6!a	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies that the instrument is requested to be cancelled.</p> <p>RULE: If present, this field must contain the word CANCEL</p>
2.8	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field contains additional information for the Receiver.</p> <p>CODES (Optional):</p> <p>PHONBEN = Telephone beneficiary.</p> <p>TELEBEN = Telecommunication. Please advise the beneficiary by the most efficient means of telecommunication.</p>

2.9	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name or reference.  CODES: COUR = Courier delivery (for example FedEx, DHL, UPS) EMAL = Email transfer FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) MAIL = Postal delivery OTHR = Other delivery channel RULE: For MT 798<767> this field is not used
		<b>End of Sequence A General Information</b>			
		<b>Mandatory Sequence B Undertaking Details</b>			
2.10	15B	New Sequence	Empty field	M	DEFN: This field specifies the start of mandatory sequence B Undertaking Details.  GUID: As part of the Amendment flow, if 22A is ISCA or ICCA, sequence B of MT 798<767> may be skipped altogether.
2.11	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the unique and unambiguous undertaking identifier assigned by the issuer.
2.12	26E	Number of Amendment	3n	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number that identifies this amendment.
2.13	30	Date of Amendment	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the undertaking amendment is issued.  RULE: For MT 798<767> this field must specify current date.
2.14	52a	Issuer	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party that issues the undertaking (or counter-undertaking).
<u>2.15</u>	<u>23</u>	<u>Advising Bank Reference</u>	<u>16x</u>	<u>O</u>	<u>DEFN: This field specifies a reference assigned by the advising bank.</u>
2.1 <u>65</u>	32B	Increase of Undertaking Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the currency and the amount of the increase of the undertaking amount.  RULE: For MT 798<767>, Either field 32B or field 33B (Decrease of Credit Amount) may be present, but not both fields.

2.1 <u>76</u>	33B	Decrease of Undertaking Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the currency and the amount of the decrease of the undertaking amount. RULE: For MT 798<767>, Either field 32B or field 33B (Decrease of Credit Amount) may be present, but not both fields.
2.1 <u>87</u>	23B	Expiry Type	4!c (Type)	O	DEFN: This field specifies whether the undertaking has a specified expiry date or is open-ended or is dependent on a documentary condition, if changed. CODES: COND = Expiry condition). FIXD = Specified date of expiry. OPEN = No specified date of expiry.
2.1 <u>98</u>	31E	Date of Expiry	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the new date, if changed, when the undertaking will cease to be available.
2. <u>204</u> <u>9</u>	35G	Expiry Condition/Event	12*65x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary condition/event, if changed, that indicates when the undertaking will cease to be available,
2.2 <u>10</u>	59a	Beneficiary	<b>No letter option</b> [/34x] (Account) 4*35x (Name and Address) <b>A</b> [/34x] (Account) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the new beneficiary of the undertaking, if changed.
2.2 <u>24</u>	77U	Other Amendments of Undertaking	150*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies changes to the terms and conditions of the undertaking (excluding information already expressed in other associated messages).
2.2 <u>32</u>	24E	Delivery of Amendment To Undertaking	4!c/[35x] (Code)(Additional Information)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the method by which the amendment to the undertaking is to be delivered. Code must contain one of the following codes: COLL By collection COUR By courier (for example, Fedex, DHL, UPS) MAIL By mail MESS By messenger - hand-deliver OTHR Other method REGM By registered mail or airmail

2.2 <sup>43</sup>	24G	Delivery To/Collection By	4!c (Code) [12*65z6*35x] (Name and AddressNarrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies to whom the amendment to the undertaking is to be delivered or by whom the amendment to the undertaking is to be collected. Code must contain one of the following codes: BENE Beneficiary OTHR Specified address
<b>End of Sequence B Undertaking Details</b>					
<b>Optional Sequence C Local Undertaking Details</b>					
2.2 <sup>54</sup>	15C	New Sequence Empty field		M	DEFN: This field specifies the start of optional sequence C Local Undertaking Details.
2.2 <sup>65</sup>	32B	Increase of Local Undertaking Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the currency and the amount of the increase of the local undertaking amount.
2.2 <sup>76</sup>	33B	Decrease of Local Undertaking Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the currency and the amount of the decrease of the local undertaking amount.
2.2 <sup>87</sup>	23B	Expiry Type	4!c (Type)	O	DEFN: This field specifies whether the local undertaking has a specified expiry date or is open-ended or is dependent on a documentary condition, if changed. CODES: COND = Expiry condition). FIXD = Specified date of expiry. OPEN = No specified date of expiry
2.2 <sup>98</sup>	31E	Date of Expiry	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the new date when the local undertaking will cease to be available, if changed.
2. <sup>302</sup> <sub>9</sub>	35G	Expiry Condition/Event	12*65x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the new documentary condition/event, if changed, that indicates when the local undertaking will cease to be available, for example 180 days after date of required document.
2.3 <sup>10</sup>	59	Beneficiary	[/34x] (Account) 4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the new beneficiary of the local undertaking, if changed.
2.3 <sup>24</sup>	77L	Other Amendments of Local Undertaking	150*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies changes to the terms and conditions of the undertaking.

2.3 <u>32</u>	24E	Delivery of Amendment To Local Undertaking	4!c/[35x] (Code)(Additional Information)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the method by which the amendment to the local undertaking is to be delivered. Code must contain one of the following codes: COLL By collection COUR By courier (for example, Fedex, DHL, UPS) MAIL By mail MESS By messenger - hand-deliver OTHR Other method REGM By registered mail or airmail
2.3 <u>43</u>	24G	Delivery To/Collection By	4!c (Code) <u>[12*65z6*35x]</u> ( <u>Name and AddressNarrative</u> )	O	DEFN: This field specifies to whom the amendment to the local undertaking is to be delivered or by whom the amendment to the local undertaking is to be collected. Code must contain one of the following codes: BENE Beneficiary OTHR Specified address
<b>End of Sequence C Local Undertaking Details</b>					

### MT 767 Network Validated Rules

**C1** In sequence B, either field 32B or 33B may be present, but not both. (Error code(s): C12).

In sequence C, either field 32B or 33B may be present, but not both. (Error code(s): C12).

**C2** In sequence B, if field 23B is COND then field 35G must be present, otherwise field 35G is not allowed. (Error code(s): E02).

In sequence C, if field 23B is COND then field 35G must be present, otherwise field 35G is not allowed. (Error code(s): E02).

**C3** In sequence A, if field 22A is ISCA or ICCA, then sequence C must be present, otherwise sequence C is not allowed (Error code(s): C19).

**C4** In sequence C, if field 15C is present, then at least one of the other fields of sequence C must be present (Error code(s): C98).

**C5** In sequence A, if field 22A is ACNA or ADVA, then field 23 may be present, otherwise field 23 is not allowed (Error code(s): C20).

**C6** In sequence A, if field 22A is ISCA or ICCA, then, in sequence B, fields 24E and 24G are not allowed (Error code(s): C19).

## MT 798<775> - Request for Amendment of Guarantee / Standby LC Extension

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message. GUID: For MT 798<775> this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension). RULE: For MT 798<775> the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 775.
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver. RULE: For MT 798<775> the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 775]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;775&gt; the message index number must start with a value of 3 for the first MT 798&lt;775&gt; in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798&lt;775&gt;, e.g., 3/4, 4/4, or 3/5, 4/5, 5/5.</p> <p>NOTE: field is not present in the MT 775 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer..</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 775 Message Reference Guide.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
		<b>MT 775 Message</b>		M	<p>MT 775 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)</p> <p>NOTE: A maximum of seven MT 798&lt;775&gt;s are permitted.</p>
2.3	27	Sequence of Total	1!n/1!n (Number)(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the number of this message in the series of messages sent for a documentary credit, and the total number of messages in the series.</p> <p>NOTE: A maximum of seven MT 798&lt;775&gt;s are permitted.</p>
2.4	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the unique and unambiguous undertaking identifier that is assigned by the issuer.

2.5	21	Related Reference	16x	O	<p>DEFN: If the Receiver of this message has previously sent an MT 768 Acknowledgement of a Guarantee Message or its equivalent, this field contains the contents of field 20 Transaction Reference Number of the acknowledgement.</p> <p>If no acknowledgement has been previously received, this field will contain a reference which is meaningful to the Receiver, for example, the guarantee number.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;775&gt; this field is not used</p>
2.6	26E	Number of Amendment	3n	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number that identifies this amendment.
2.7	52a	Issuer	<p><b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)</p> <p><b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name &amp; Address)</p>	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party that issues the undertaking (or counter-undertaking).
2.8	77U	Undertaking Terms and Conditions	150*65z (Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the applicable terms and conditions of the undertaking.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;775&gt; At least one of the fields 77U or 77L must be present.</p>
2.9	77L	Requested Local Undertaking Terms and Conditions	150*65z (Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the requested terms and conditions of the local undertaking.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;775&gt; At least one of the fields 77U or 77L must be present.</p>

## MT 775 Network Validated Rules

**C1** Either field 77U or field 77L must be present, both may be present (Error code(s): C19).

## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the amendment requested.

### Narrative

On 21st June 2020 Pumpen AG instructs its bank, i.e. Bank of Germany AG in Frankfurt to amend the Performance Guarantee Number PGFFA0815 (Customer Reference XYZ999) as follows:

Please extend the guarantee until 30th June 2020.

The guarantee amendment should be delivered to the Beneficiary by registered mail or airmail.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;763&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	PUMPCORP
Message Type	798
Receiver	BOGEDEFFXXX
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:TRE96372
Sub-message type	:12:763
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21A:XYZ999-123 :21T:XYZ999 :20:PGFFA0815 :13E:202006211433 :31L:200630 :24E:REGM :24G:BENE

<b>SWIFT Message - 2 MT 798 &lt;767&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	PUMPCORP
Message Type	798
Receiver	BOGEDEFFXXX
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:TRE96372
Sub-message type	:12:767
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21A:XYZ999-123 :15A: :27:1/1 :22A:ADVA :15B: :20:PGFFA0815 :26E:01 :30:200621 :52A:BOGEDEFFXXX :31E:200530 :77U>All other terms and conditions remain unchanged

## 2.3.4 Notification of Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit

### Scope

The Notification of the Issue of, or the Request to a third bank of amendment to, a previously issued Guarantee / Standby LC is sent to the corporate by their bank and comprises at least two MT 798 messages. It may be used in the following scenarios:

- To notify the applicant that an amendment to a previously issued Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit
- To notify the applicant that a request to a third bank for the amendment to a previously issued Guarantee / Standby LC

### Usage

A single Notification of Amendment of Guarantee / Standby LC must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 764 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 767 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 767 and enveloping one MT 767 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 767 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.
- In addition, up to a maximum of seven MT 798 messages may optionally be included, each identified with a sub-message type of 775 and enveloping one MT 775 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 775 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document.

Each MT 798 messages for a single Notification of Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit must be identified with the same Customer Reference Number, specified as field 21A. the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

### Sequence of Notification Messages

The Notification of the Issue of, or the Request to a third bank of amendment to, a previously issued Guarantee / Standby LC is a message that is sent by the issuing bank to the applicant on issuance of an amendment.

Following this notification, additional information related to the amendment such as that received by the issuing bank in the MT 768 (Acknowledgement of a Guarantee / Standby LC Message) indicating acceptance or rejection of the amendment by the beneficiary should be notified by the issuing bank to the applicant in the MT 798<789> + MT 798<799> Free Format messages. The guarantee number must be specified in 21P (Bank Reference Number) of the MT 798<789> and field 20 (Transaction Reference Number) of the MT 798<799>.

## MT 798<764> - Notification of Amendment of Guarantee / Standby LC Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;764&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;764&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 764.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;764&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<764> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/3.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.5	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.6	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank.
2.7	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.8	49Z	Special agreements	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates any special agreements between the Customer and the bank for the specified undertaking amendment.
2.9	29B	Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the bank
2.10	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains additional information for the Receiver.

2.11	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.12	26E	Number of Amendment	3n (Number)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the number which identifies this amendment.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;764&gt; this number must be the same as field 26E in the accompanying MT 798&lt;767&gt;</p>
2.13	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.14	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.15	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<767> - Notification of Amendment of Guarantee / Standby LC Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;767&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;767&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 767.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	<p>73z (Text)  <span style="color:red">[n*78z][n*145z]</span>  <span style="color:red">1 (Text)</span></p>	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;767&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 767]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: MT 798<767> The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798<767> in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798<767>, e.g., 2/3. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 767 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 767 Message</b>		M	MT 767 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)

## MT 798<775> - Notification of Amendment of Guarantee / Standby LC Extension

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;775&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;775&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 775.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;775&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 775]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: MT 798<760> The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798<760> in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798<760>, e.g., 2/3. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 775 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 775 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 775 Message</b>		M	MT 775 message contents. (Refer The <i>SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit</i> )

## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the amendment requested.

### Narrative

On 22nd June 2020 Bank of Germany AG in Frankfurt issues an amendment to its Performance Guarantee number PGFFA0815 based on the previously given instructions by Pumpen AG with the following details:

Re: Our Performance Guarantee No . PGFFA0815 issued on 06th May 2020 for EUR 50.000,00 in favour of Mining PLC, Main Road, Oslo NORWAY, on behalf of Pumpen AG, Postfach 123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY – concerning the delivery of pumps and equipment as per contract number ABC123 dated 05th February 2020.

Dear Sirs,

at the request of our customers, we hereby extend the validity of our above mentioned guarantee as follows:

Our liability under this guarantee will expire on 30th June 2021, at the latest, by which date any claim for payment must be received by us.

All other terms and conditions remain unchanged.

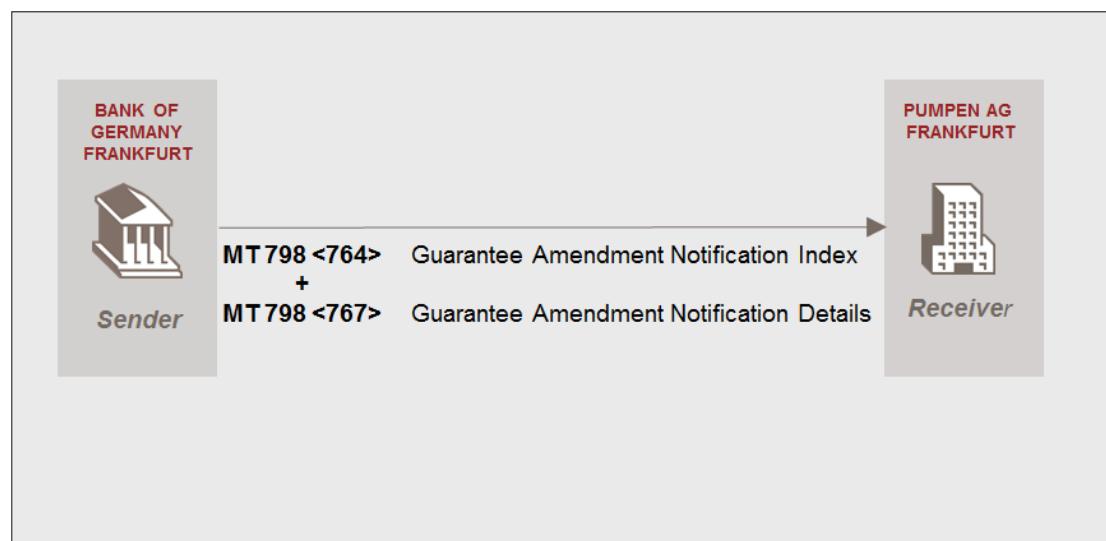
Very truly yours

BANK OF GERMANY

Aktiengesellschaft

On the same day Bank of Germany notifies the Applicant (i.e. Pumpen AG) about the amendment to the guarantee.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;764&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:KLM96372
Sub-message type	:12:764
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21A:XYZ999-123 :21T:XYZ999 :21P:ABC66578-123 :21S:ABC66578 :20:PGFFA0815 :13E:202006221033 :31L:210630

<b>SWIFT Message - 2 MT 798 &lt;767&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:BVC96372
Sub-message type	:12:767
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:ABC66578-123 :15A: :27:1/1 :22A:ADVA :15B: :20:PGFFA0815 :26E:1 :30:200506 :52A:BOGEDEFFXXX :31E:210630

## 2.3.5 Response to Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit

### Scope

The Response to Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit is sent by the corporate (beneficiary) to its bank and comprises at least two MT 798 messages. It is used to inform the bank that the amendment has been either accepted or refused.

### Usage

A single Response to Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 728 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 787 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 787 and enveloping one MT 787 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 787 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Each MT 798 messages for a single Response to Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit must be identified with the same Customer Reference Number, specified as field 21A, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

**MT 798<728> - Response to Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Index**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;728&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;728&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 728.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;728&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
<b>No.</b>	<b>Tag</b>	<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Format</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines</b>
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<728> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/2.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the corporate customer to the undertaking amendment. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the unique and unambiguous identifier assigned by the issuer to the undertaking.
2.5	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the advising bank.
2.6	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.7	30	Date of Amendment	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the undertaking as being amended.
2.8	26E	Number of Amendment	3n (Number)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the number which identifies this amendment. RULE: For MT 798<728> this number must be the same as field 26E in the accompanying MT 798<787>
2.9	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used for other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.

2.10	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the undertaking as being issued.
2.11	29A	Customer Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the corporate.
2.12	72Z	Corporate to Bank Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the bank.
2.13	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field type of channel for the claim presentation and where appropriate, any associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>ORIG = Original presentation (this MT 798&lt;728&gt; represents the complete advice, no other documentation to accompany or follow this message)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>GUID: Any code in this field, other than ORIG, should be considered as an incomplete advice from the beneficiary.</p>
2.14	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.15	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

2.16	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
------	-----	----------------------	-------------------------------------	---	--

## MT 798<787> - Response to Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message. GUID: For MT 798<787> this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension). RULE: For MT 798<787> the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 787.
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <u>[n*78z][n*145z]</u> 1 (Text)	M	DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver. RULE: For MT 798<787> the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 787]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: MT 798&lt;787&gt; The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798&lt;787&gt; in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798&lt;765&gt;, e.g., 2/3.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 787 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the corporate customer to the undertaking amendment.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
2.3		<b>MT 787 Message</b>		M	<p><b>MT 787</b> message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)</p> <p><i>Fields are listed below for convenience</i></p>
2.4	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field contains the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.
2.5	21	Related Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field contains the reference number of the undertaking.
2.6	52a	Issuer	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party that issues the undertaking (or counter-undertaking) amendment.
2.7	26E	Number of Amendment	3n	M	DEFN: This field specifies the number of the amendment to which this message is a response.

2.8	23R	Amendment Status	4!c (Code) [6*35x] (Text)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the status of the amendment.  CODES: ACCP = Accepted REJT = Rejected
2.9	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains additional information for the Receiver.  RULE: For MT 798<787> this field is not used
2.10	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name or reference.  CODES: COUR = Courier delivery (for example FedEx, DHL, UPS) EMAL = Email transfer FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) MAIL = Postal delivery OTHR = Other delivery channel  RULE: For MT 798<787> this field is not used

## Business Example

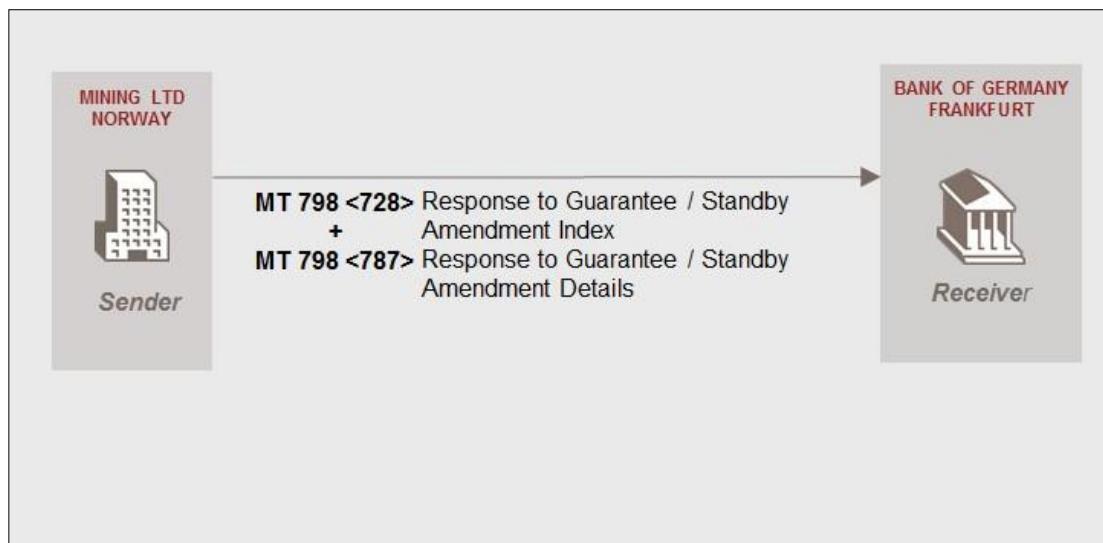
### Narrative

On 22nd June 2020 Bank of Germany AG in Frankfurt issues an amendment to its Performance Guarantee number PGFFA0815 based on the previously given instructions by Pumpen AG with the following details:

On the same day Bank of Germany notifies the Applicant (i.e. Pumpen AG) and the Beneficiary (Mining LTD) about the amendment to the guarantee.

On 27<sup>th</sup> June 2020, the beneficiary (Mining LTD) accepts the amendment.

### Information Flow



### SWIFT Message

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;728&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	MININGNO
Message Type	798
Receiver	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:MNN9843
Sub-message type	:12:728
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21A:XYY386-123 :21T:XYY386 :21P:BOG3456-123 :21S:BOG3456 :13E:202006270945 :31C:200506 :29A:JOHN GULLIVER PH + 44 12986523

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;787&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	MININGNO
Message Type	798
Receiver	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:MNN9844
Sub-message type	:12:787
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21A:XYY386-123 :20:PGFFA0815 :21:ABC6767 :52A:BOGEDEFFXXX :26E:01 :23R:ACCP

## 2.3.6      **Advice of Acceptance / Refusal of Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit**

### **Scope**

The Advice of Acceptance Refusal of Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit is sent to the corporate (applicant) by their bank and comprises two MT 798 messages. It is used to advise the applicant that the amendment has been either accepted or refused.

### **Usage**

A single Advice of Acceptance/Refusal of Amendment Status of Guarantee/Standby Letter of Credit must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 739 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 787 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 787 and enveloping one MT 787 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 787 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Each MT 798 messages for a single Advice of Amendment Status of Guarantee/Standby Letter of Credit must be identified with the same Customer Reference Number, specified as field 21A, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

**MT 798<739> - Advice of Acceptance / Refusal of Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Index**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;739&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;739&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 739.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;739&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<739> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/2.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the customer.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer. In this case to the undertaking amendment.
2.4	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the unique and unambiguous identifier assigned by the issuer to the undertaking.
2.5	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the advising bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.6	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.7	30	Date of Amendment	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the credit as being amended.
2.8	26E	Number of Amendment	3n (Number)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the number which identifies this amendment. RULE: For MT 798<739> this number must be the same as field 26E in the accompanying MT 798<787>

2.9	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	<p>DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.</p> <p>GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.</p>
2.10	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the undertaking as being issued.
2.11	29B	Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the bank.
2.12	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the bank.
2.13	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field type of channel for the claim presentation and where appropriate, any associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>ORIG = Original presentation (this MT 798&lt;739&gt; represents the complete advice, no other documentation to accompany or follow this message)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>GUID: Any code in this field, other than ORIG, should be considered as an incomplete advice from the beneficiary.</p>
2.14	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

2.15	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.16	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

### MT 798<787> - Advice of Acceptance / Refusal of Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message. GUID: For MT 798<787> this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension). RULE: For MT 798<787> the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 787.
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <u>[n*78z][n*145z]</u> 1 (Text)	M	DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver. RULE: For MT 798<787> the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 787]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: MT 798&lt;787&gt; The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798&lt;787&gt; in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798&lt;765&gt;, e.g., 2/3.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 787 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a reference number assigned by the bank.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 787 Message Reference Guide.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
2.3		<b>MT 787 Message</b>		M	<b>MT 787</b> message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)

## Business Example

### Narrative

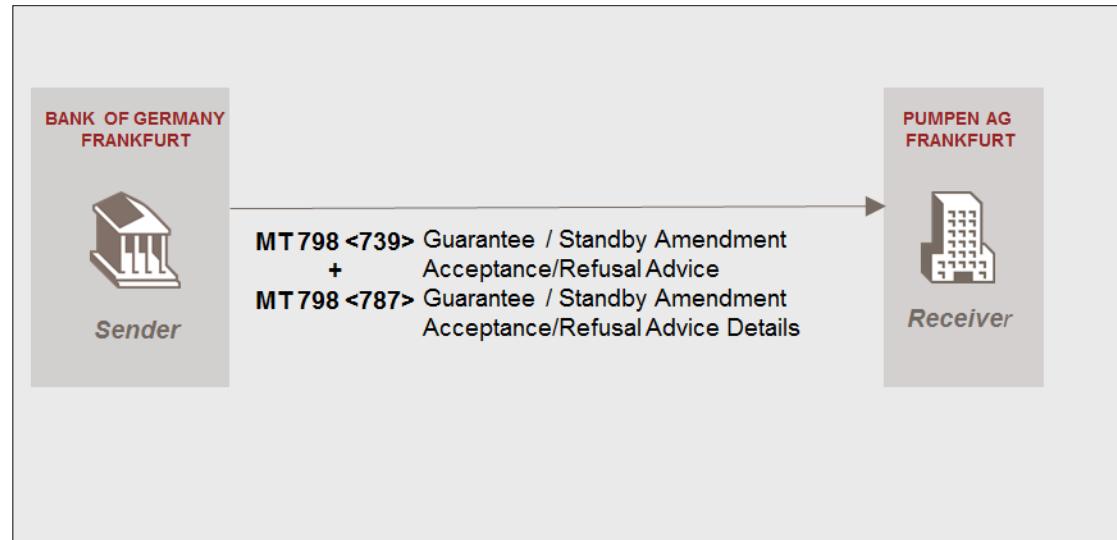
On 22nd June 2020 Bank of Germany AG in Frankfurt issues an amendment to its Performance Guarantee number PGFFA0815 based on the previously given instructions by Pumpen AG with the following details:

On the same day Bank of Germany notifies the Applicant (i.e. Pumpen AG) and the Beneficiary (Mining LTD) about the amendment to the guarantee.

On 27<sup>th</sup> June 2020 the beneficiary (Mining LTD) accepts the amendment.

On the same day Bank of Germany notifies the Applicant (ie. Pumpen AG) about the acceptance of amendment to the guarantee.

### Information Flow



### SWIFT Message

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;739&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:BOG8856
Sub-message type	:12:739
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21A:EFFA7788-123 :21T:EFFA7788 :21P:PUM389-123 :21S:PUM389 :13E:202006271745 :31C:200506 :29A:Peterson Alfred PH +32 2 4567841

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;787&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:BOG8857
Sub-message type	:12:787
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:PUM389-123 :20:PGFFA0815 :21:ABC6767 :52A:BOGEDEFFXXX :26E:01 :23R:ACCP

## 2.3.7 Advice of issued Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit

### Scope

The Advice of issued Guarantee / Standby LC is sent to the corporate (Beneficiary) by its bank (Advising Bank) as advice of an issued Guarantee or Standby LC. It comprises up to two MT 798 messages, the MT 798<745> and when available, the MT 798<760> details message and up to seven MT 798<761> extension messages. It is used to notify the beneficiary that a Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit has been issued.

### Usage

A single Advice of issued Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 745 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 760 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- The second, optional, MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 760 and enveloping one MT 760 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 760 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.
- In addition, up to a maximum of seven MT 798 messages may optionally be included, each identified with a sub-message type of 761 and enveloping one MT 761 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 761 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document.

Each MT 798 message for a single Advice of issued Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit must be identified with the Bank Reference Number, specified as field 21P, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

## MT 798<745> - Advice of issued Guarantee/ Standby LC Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;745&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;745&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 745.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;745&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<745> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/3.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a reference number assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the Undertaking number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a related reference number assigned by the customer.
2.6	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.7	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the Undertaking as being issued.
2.8	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.
2.9	29B	Issuing/Guarantor Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the issuing/guarantor bank.
2.10	29D	Advising Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the advising/confirming bank, if different from the issuing/guarantor bank.

2.11	78B	Instructions from the Bank	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates instructions from the bank.
2.12	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate customer.
2.13	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name, for ancillary documentation / information.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul>
2.14	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.15	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.16	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<760> - Advice of issued Guarantee / Standby LC Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 760.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 760]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: MT 798&lt;760&gt; The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798&lt;760&gt; in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798&lt;760&gt;, e.g., 2/3.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 760 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a reference number assigned by the bank.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 760 Message Reference Guide.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
2.3		<b>MT 760 Message</b>		M	<b>MT 760</b> message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)
<b>Note</b>	22D	Form of Undertaking	4!c		<p>DEFN: This field specifies the form of the independent undertaking.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DGAR = Demand guarantee</li> <li>STBY = Standby letter of credit</li> <li>DEPU = Dependent undertaking</li> </ul> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;760&gt; code DEPU has been added to allow the bank to confirm issuance of a dependant undertaking such as a surety.</p>

## MT 798<761> - Advice of Guarantee / Standby LC Extension

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;761&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;761&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 761.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;761&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 761]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: MT 798<760> The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798<760> in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798<760>, e.g., 2/3. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 761 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 761 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 761 Message</b>		M	MT 761 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)

## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the application requested.

### Narrative

On 06th May 2020, Bank of Germany AG in Frankfurt issues its Performance Guarantee number PGFFA0815 based on the previously given instructions by Pumpen AG, Postfach 123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY and in favour of Mining Ltd., Main Road, Oslo, NORWAY with the following details:

Performance Guarantee No . PGFFA0815

We have been informed that you, Mining PLC, Main Road, Oslo NORWAY, hereinafter called the BUYER have concluded the contract No. ABC123 of 05th February 2020, hereinafter called the CONTRACT, with Pumpen AG, Postfach 123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY, hereinafter called the SELLER, according to which the SELLER will deliver to the BUYER pumps and equipment, in the total value of EUR 500.000,00.

As agreed the SELLER has to provide a bank guarantee in favour of the BUYER, amounting to 10 percent of the total value, i.e. EUR 50.000,00 , to cover the fulfilment of the SELLER's obligations under the CONTRACT.

In consideration of the aforesaid, we, Bank of Germany Aktiengesellschaft, Frankfurt, Germany, hereby issue the guarantee on behalf of the SELLER towards the BUYER to the maximum amount of

EUR 50.000,00 (in words: EUR fifty thousand 00/100)

and undertake irrevocably without consideration of any objections and defences of the SELLER or third parties and irrespective of the validity and legal effect of the CONTRACT and waiving any objections arising there from to pay to the BUYER any amount claimed from us by the BUYER up to the maximum amount of this guarantee upon receipt of the BUYER's first demand in writing, in which the BUYER simultaneously confirms

that the SELLER is in breach of its obligations towards the BUYER under the CONTRACT.

The obligation under this guarantee shall expire on 31st December 2020.

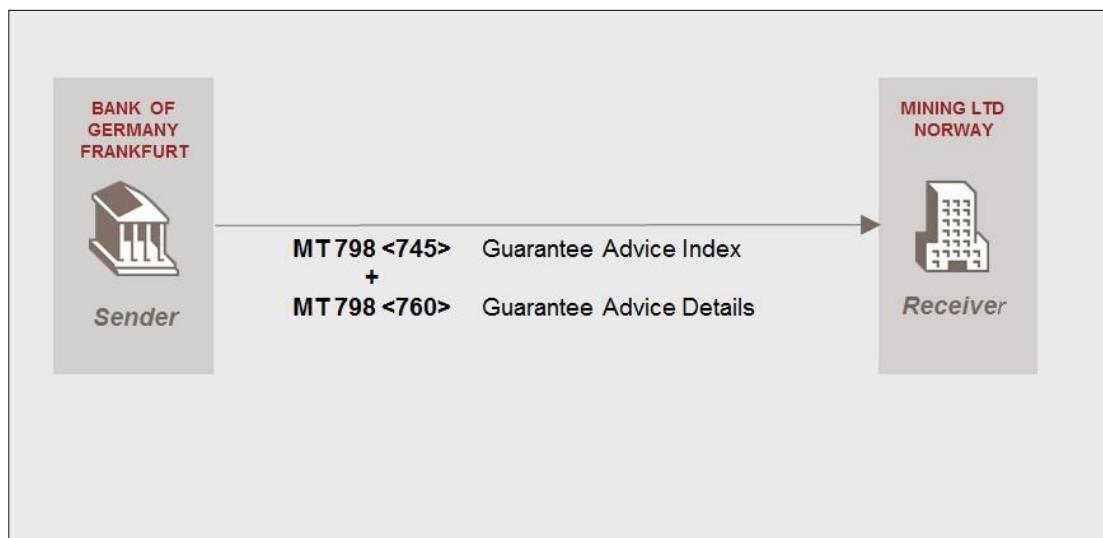
Any claim for payment complying with the above conditions must be received by us within the validity period of this guarantee.

This guarantee shall be governed by the law of the Federal Republic of Germany. Exclusive place of jurisdiction shall be Frankfurt (Main) GERMANY.

On the same day Bank of Germany notifies the Applicant (i.e. Pumpen AG) about the issuance of the guarantee and advises Beneficiary (i.e. Mining Ltd.).

Bank of Germany's contact is Arthur Dent.

### Information Flow

**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;745&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	MININGNO
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:BVC96383
Sub-message type	:12:745
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21P:34567AC1-123 :21S:34567AC1 :20:PGFFA0815 :31C:200506 :13E:202005061045 :29B:Arthur Dent

<b>SWIFT Message - 2 MT 798 &lt;760&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	MININGNO
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:BVC96384
Sub-message type	:12:760

Proprietary message	<p>:77E:      :27A:2/2      :21P:34567AC1-123      :15A:      :27:1/1      :22A:ISSU      :15B:      :20:PGFFA0815      :30:200506      :22D:DGAR      :40C:NONE      :23B:FIXD      :31E:201231      :50:Pumpen AG      Postfach 123      60599 Frankfurt / GERMANY      :52A:BOGEDEFFXXX      :59D:Mining Ltd.      Main Road      Oslo / NORWAY      :32B:EUR50000,      :77U:We have been informed that you, Mining PLC, Main Road, Oslo      NORWAY, hereinafter called the BUYER have concluded the contract No. ABC123 of 05th February 2020,      hereinafter called the CONTRACT, with Pumpen AG, Postfach 123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY, hereinafter called the SELLER,      according to which the SELLER will deliver to the BUYER pumps      and equipment, in the total value of EUR 500.000,00.      As agreed the SELLER has to provide a bank guarantee in favour      of the BUYER, amounting to 10 percent of the total value, i.e.      EUR 50.000,00 to cover the fulfilment of the SELLER's      obligations under the CONTRACT.      In consideration of the aforesaid, we, Bank of Germany      Aktiengesellschaft, Frankfurt, Germany, hereby issue the      guarantee on behalf of the SELLER towards the BUYER to the      maximum amount of EUR 50.000,00 (in words: EUR fifty      thousand 00/100) and undertake irrevocably without</p>
---------------------	--

	<p>We have been informed that you, Mining PLC, Main Road, Oslo Main Road, Oslo NORWAY, hereinafter called the BUYER have concluded the contract No. ABC123 of 05th February 2009, hereinafter called the CONTRACT, with Pumpen AG, Postfach 123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY, hereinafter called the SELLER, according to which the SELLER will deliver to the BUYER pumps and equipment, in the total value of EUR 500.000,00.</p> <p>As agreed the SELLER has to provide a bank guarantee in favour of the BUYER, amounting to 10 percent of the total value, i.e. EUR 50.000,00 to cover the fulfilment of the SELLER's obligations under the CONTRACT.</p> <p>In consideration of the aforesaid, we, Bank of Germany Aktiengesellschaft, Frankfurt, Germany, hereby issue the guarantee on behalf of the SELLER towards the BUYER to the maximum amount of EUR 50.000,00 (in words: EUR fifty thousand 00/100) and undertake irrevocably without consideration of any objections and defences of the SELLER or third parties and irrespective of the validity Main Road, Oslo NORWAY, hereinafter called the BUYER have concluded the contract No. ABC123 of 05th February 2009, hereinafter called the CONTRACT, with Pumpen AG, Postfach 123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY, hereinafter called the SELLER, according to which the SELLER will deliver to the BUYER pumps and equipment, in the total value of EUR 500.000,00.</p> <p>As agreed the SELLER has to provide a bank guarantee in favour of the BUYER, amounting to 10 percent of the total value, i.e. EUR 50.000,00 to cover the fulfilment of the SELLER's obligations under the CONTRACT.</p> <p>In consideration of the aforesaid, we, Bank of Germany Aktiengesellschaft, Frankfurt, Germany, hereby issue the</p>
--	--

	<p>guarantee on behalf of the SELLER towards the BUYER to the maximum amount of EUR 50.000,00 (in words: EUR fifty thousand 00/100) and undertake irrevocably without</p>
	<p>and legal effect of the CONTRACT and waiving any objections arising there from to pay to the BUYER any amount claimed from us by the BUYER up to the maximum amount of this guarantee upon receipt of the BUYER's first demand in writing, in which the BUYER simultaneously confirms that the SELLER is in breach of its obligations towards the BUYER under the CONTRACT.</p> <p>This guarantee shall be governed by the law of the Federal Republic of Germany. Exclusive place of jurisdiction shall be Frankfurt (Main) GERMANY.</p>

## 2.3.8 Advice of amended Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit

### Scope

The Advice of amended Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit message is sent to the corporate (Beneficiary) by its bank (Advising Bank) as advice of amendment to, a Guarantee or Standby LC. It comprises up to two MT 798 messages, the MT 798<743> and when available, the MT 798<767> details message and up to seven MT 798<775> extension messages. It is used to notify the beneficiary that a Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit has been amended.

### Usage

A single Advice of amended Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 743 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 767 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- The second, optional, MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 767 and enveloping one MT 767 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 767 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.
- In addition, up to a maximum of seven MT 798 messages may optionally be included, each identified with a sub-message type of 775 and enveloping one MT 775 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 775 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document.

Each MT 798 message for a single Advice of issued Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit must be identified with the Bank Reference Number, specified as field 21P, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

**MT 798<743> - Advice of amended Guarantee / Standby LC Index**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;743&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;743&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 743.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;743&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<743> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/3.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies an additional reference number assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the Undertaking number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a reference number assigned by the customer.
2.6	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.7	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the Undertaking as being issued.
2.8	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.
2.9	29B	Issuing/Guarantor Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the issuing/guarantor bank.
2.10	29D	Advising Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the advising/confirming bank, if different from the issuing/guarantor bank.

2.11	78B	Instructions from the Bank	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates instructions from the bank.
2.12	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate customer.
2.13	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name, for ancillary documentation / information.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul>
2.14	26E	Number of Amendment	3n (Number)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the number which identifies this amendment.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;743&gt; this number must be the same as field 26E in the accompanying MT 798&lt;767&gt;</p>
2.15	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.16	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.17	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<767> - Advice of amended Guarantee / Standby LC Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;767&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;767&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 767.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;767&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 767]					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: MT 798&lt;767&gt; The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798&lt;767&gt; in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798&lt;767&gt;, e.g., 2/3.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 767 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a reference number assigned by the bank.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 767 Message Reference Guide.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
2.3		<b>MT 767 Message</b>		M	<b>MT 767</b> message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)

## MT 798<775> - Advice of Amendment of Guarantee / Standby LC Extension

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;775&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;775&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 775.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	<p>73z (Text)  <u>[n*78z][n*145z]</u>  <u>1</u> (Text)</p>	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;775&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 775]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: MT 798<760> The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798<760> in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798<760>, e.g., 2/3. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 775 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 775 Message Reference Guide. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 775 Message</b>		M	MT 775 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)

## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the amendment requested.

### Narrative

On 22nd June 2020, Bank of Germany AG in Frankfurt issues an amendment to its Performance Guarantee number PGFFA0815 based on the previously given instructions by Pumpen AG with the following details:

Re: Our Performance Guarantee No . PGFFA0815 issued on 06th May 2020 for EUR 50.000,00 in favour of Mining LTD, Main Road, Oslo NORWAY, on behalf of Pumpen AG, Postfach 123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY – concerning the delivery of pumps and equipment as per contract number ABC123 dated 05th February 2020.

Dear Sirs,

at the request of our customers, we hereby extend the validity of our above mentioned guarantee as follows:

Our liability under this guarantee will expire on 30th June 2021, at the latest, by which date any claim for payment must be received by us.

All other terms and conditions remain unchanged.

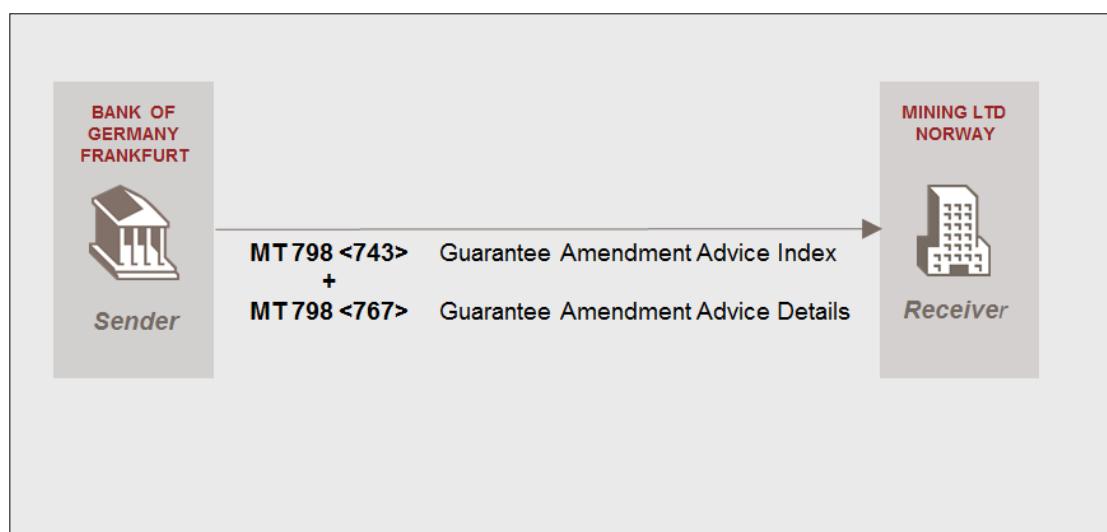
Very truly yours

BANK OF GERMANY

Aktiengesellschaft

On the same day Bank of Germany notifies the Applicant (i.e. Pumpen AG) and the Beneficiary (Mining LTD) about the amendment to the guarantee.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;743&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	MININGNO
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:KLM96398
Sub-message type	:12:743
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21P:XZZ998-123 :21S:XZZ998 :20:PGFFA0815 :31C:200622 :13E:202006221045 :26E:1

<b>SWIFT Message - 2 MT 798 &lt;767&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	MININGNO
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:KLM96399
Sub-message type	:12:767
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:XZZ998-123 :15A: :27:1/1 :22A:ADVA :15B: :20:PGFFA0815 :26E:1 :30:200506 :52A:BOGEDEFFXXX :31E:210630

## 2.3.9      **Query to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit**

### **Scope**

The Query to Extend or Pay is sent by the bank to the corporate (Applicant) and comprises one MT 798 message. This message is used to indicate that the bank has received a request to "extend or pay" under a specified Guarantee / Standby LC and to seek a response from the Applicant, either to extend or pay the undertaking.

### **Usage**

A single Query to Extend or Pay message must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 777 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for bank-to-corporate exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.
- The second, optional, MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 765 and enveloping one MT 765 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 765 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

**MT 798<777> - Query to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby LC Index**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;777&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;777&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 777.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;777&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<777> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, for example 1/1, o 1/2.
2.2	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer or a fixed value of NONREF.
2.3	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.4	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.5	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the issuing bank.
2.6	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.7	31C	Date of Extend or Pay Request	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date at which the bank received the request to extend or pay. RULE: The required format is: YYMMDD
2.8	34D	Amount Claimed	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency and amount of the claimed amount, if stated separately in the request to extend or pay.
2.9	31L	New Validity Expiry Date	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the new expiry date of the Guarantee / Standby LC in case of an extension. RULE: The required format is: YYMMDD <b>GUID: In case of counter undertaking or counter-counter undertaking, this field must indicate New Date of Expiry of Local Undertaking.</b>
2.10	49J	Text of Extend or Pay Request	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates the text of the request to extend or pay.
2.11	78B	Instructions from the Bank	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates instructions from the sender bank.

2.12	31T	Latest Date for Reply	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the latest date for a response by the corporate (applicant). RULE: The required format is: YYMMDD
2.13	29B	Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the bank
2.14	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains additional information for the Receiver.
2.15	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.  CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel  RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.  GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.
2.16	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer  CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.17	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

2.18	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
------	-----	----------------------	-------------------------------------	---	--

## MT 798<765> - Query to Extend or Pay Guarantee / Letter of Credit Demand

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.  GUID: For MT 798<765> this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).  RULE: For MT 798<765> the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 765.
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <u>[n*78z][n*145z]</u> 1 (Text)	M	DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.  RULE: For MT 798<765> the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 765]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: MT 798&lt;765&gt; The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798&lt;765&gt; in the series and be incremented by 1 for the subsequent MT 798&lt;765&gt;, for example 2/2.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 765 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a reference number assigned by the bank.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 765 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.3		<b>MT 765 Message</b>		O	<b>MT 765</b> message contents. (Refer The <i>SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit</i> )

## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and receiving banks.

### Narrative

On 25th January 2020, Avalbank AG in Frankfurt receives an Extend or Pay Request by SWIFT MT 799 under its Counter Guarantee number PGFFA0815 from the Issuing Bank of the guarantee with the following details:

```
:20:444555
:21:PGFFA0815
:79:Re: Your Counter Guarantee No . PGFFA0815
for USD 75.000,00
Our LG No. 444555 Validity 31.01.2020
```

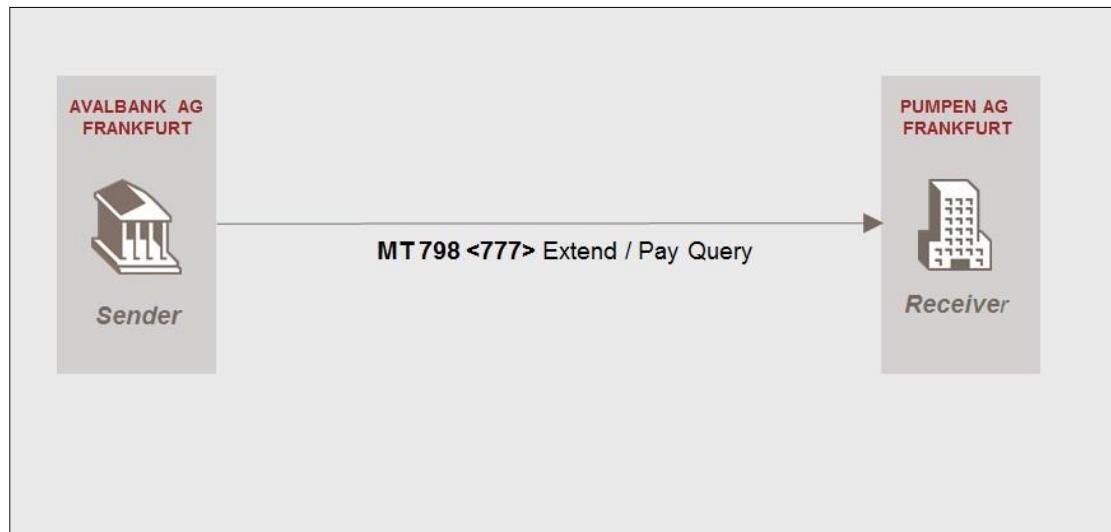
We have been called upon to pay the beneficiary under the terms and conditions of the above guarantee. However, they are willing to waive their claim provided the guarantee is extended up to 31.07.2020.

Should you elect to extend the guarantee, your counter guarantee should be extended for 15 days beyond the extended date.

On the same day Avalbank AG notifies the Applicant (i.e. Pumpen AG) about the Extend or Pay Request and asking for their instructions until 28.January 2020.

Avalbank's contact is Arthur Dent.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;777&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	AVALDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:AVL94668
Sub-message type	:12:777
Proprietary message	<p>:77E:  :27A:1/1  :21T:XYZ999  :21P:BANK98765-123  :21S:BANK98765  :20:PGFFA0815  :13E:202001251623  :31C:200125  :34D:USD75000,  :31L:200731  :49J: Re: Your Counter Guarantee No.  PGFFA0815  for USD 75.000,00  Our LG No. 444555 Validity 31.01.2020  We have been called upon to pay the  beneficiary  under the terms and conditions of the above  guarantee. However, they are willing to waive  their claim provided the guarantee is extended  up to 31.07.2020.  Should you elect to extend the guarantee, your  counter guarantee should be extended for  15 days beyond the extended date.  :78B:The guarantor informed us, that he has  been called upon to  effect payment under his guarantee by its  beneficiary in the  amount of USD 75.000,00 in accordance with its  terms.  Consequently, we have been called upon to  effect payment by the  guarantor under our above mentioned counter-  guarantee in the  aforementioned amount in accordance with its  terms.  The guarantor informed us further that as an  alternative to  payment the beneficiary would accept an  extension  of our above guarantee until 31.07.2020.  Please let us have your instructions latest until  28.01.2020.  :31T:200128  :29B:Arthur Dent</p>

## 2.3.10 Response to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit

### Scope

The Response to Extend or Pay Guarantee is sent by the corporate (Applicant) to their bank and comprises one MT 798 message. This message is used by the Applicant in response to a Query to Extend or Pay Guarantee / Standby LC under a specified Guarantee / Standby LC and to indicate instructions to either extend the Guarantee/ Standby LC or pay the Guarantee / Standby LC.

### Usage

A single Response to Extend or Pay message must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 778 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for corporate-to-bank exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

**MT 798<778> - Response to extend or pay Guarantee / Standby LC Index**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;778&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;778&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 778.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;778&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<778> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the related bank reference.
2.5	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.6	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank.
2.7	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.8	31C	Date of Extend or Pay Request	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date of the received extend or pay request. RULE: The required format is: YYMMDD RULE: For MT 798<778> the contents of this field must be identical to field 31C in the corresponding MT 798 <777>.
2.9	34D	Amount Claimed	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency and amount of the claimed amount in the request to extend or pay. RULE: For MT 798<778> this field must be present, if field 12D contains the code PAYM.

2.10	31L	New Validity Expiry Date	6!n (Date)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the new expiry date of the Guarantee / Standby LC in case of an extension.</p> <p>RULE: The required format is: YYMMDD</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;778&gt; this field must be present, if field 12D contains the code EXTD</p> <p><b>GUID:</b> In case of counter undertaking or counter-counter undertaking, this field must indicate New Date of Expiry of Local Undertaking.</p>
2.11	12D	Extend or Pay Instructions	4!c (Code)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the Applicant's instruction to extend or to pay the Guarantee / Standby LC.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <p>EXTD = EXTEND</p> <p>PAYM = PAY</p>
2.12	53C	Settlement Account	/34x (Account)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the account number for the settlement of a claim for payment and/or any commissions and charges, in case that for the settlement of commissions and charges field 25A (Alternative Charges Account) is not present.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;778&gt; for accounts serviced in countries that have implemented IBAN, the IBAN should be used to identify the account.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;778&gt; this field must be present, if field 12D contains the code PAYM</p>
2.13	25A	Alternative Charges Account	/34x (Account)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the currency and account number for the settlement of commissions and charges, if different to the Settlement Account.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;778&gt; for accounts serviced in countries that have implemented IBAN, the IBAN should be used to identify the account.</p>
2.14	29A	Customer Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the corporate.
2.15	72Z	Corporate to Bank Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains additional information for the Receiver.

2.16	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.17	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.18	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.19	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

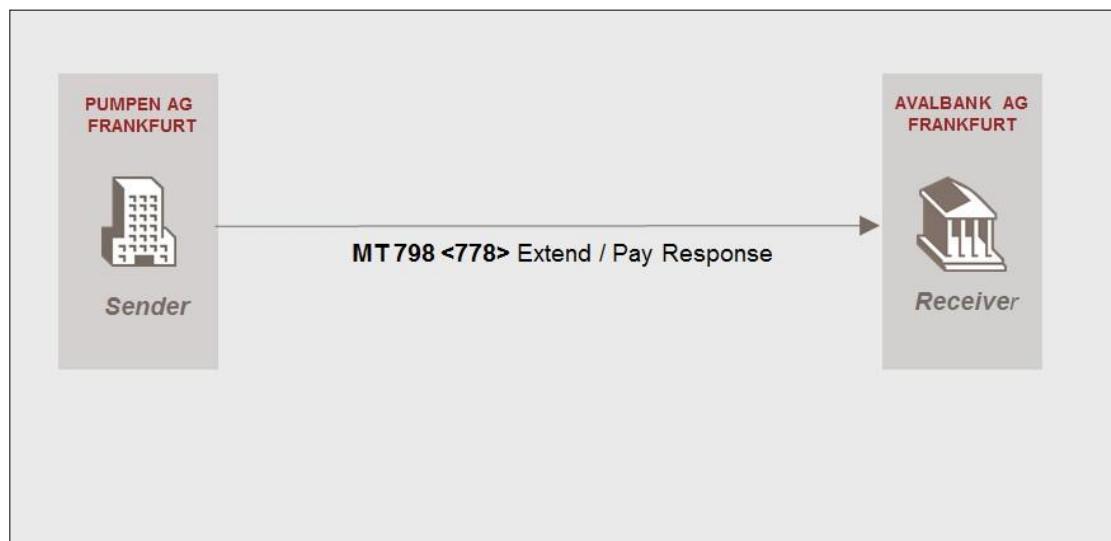
## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and receiving banks.

### Narrative

On 26th January 2020 Pumpen AG replies to the Extend or Pay Request they have received a day earlier from Avalbank AG in Frankfurt. They inform Avalbank AG, that they agree to extend the guarantee as requested by the beneficiary.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;778&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	PUMPCORP
Message Type	798
Receiver	AVALDEFFXXX
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:AVL947564
Sub-message type	:12:778
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21A:XZZ888-123 :21T:XZZ888 :21P:ABC66578-123 :21S:ABC66578 :20:PGFFA0815 :13E:202001261623 :31C:200125 :31L:200731 :12D:EXTD

### **2.3.11 Notification of Non Extension of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit**

**Scope**

The Notification of Non Extension of Guarantee / Standby LC is sent to the corporate (beneficiary) by their bank and comprises at least two MT 798 messages. These messages are sent to notify the beneficiary of the non-extension of the referenced undertaking beyond the current expiry date.

**Usage**

A single Notification of Non Extension of Guarantee / Standby LC must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 727 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 785 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 785 and enveloping one MT 785 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 785 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Each MT 798 messages for a single Notification of Non Extension of Guarantee / Standby LC must be identified with the same Customer Reference Number, specified as field 21A, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

**MT 798<727> - Notification of Guarantee / Standby LC Non Extension Index**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;727&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;727&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 727.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;727&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
<b>No.</b>	<b>Tag</b>	<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Format</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines</b>
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<727> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, i.e. 1/2.
2.2	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.3	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.4	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.5	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.6	29B	Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the bank
2.7	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains additional information for the Receiver.

2.8	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.9	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.10	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.11	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<785> - Guarantee / Standby LC Non Extension Notification Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;785&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;785&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 785.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;785&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 785]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: MT 798<785> The message index number must have a fixed value of 2, i.e. 2/2. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 785 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 785 Message</b>		M	MT 785 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) <i>Fields are listed below for convenience</i>
2.4	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the unique and unambiguous identifier assigned by the issuer of the undertaking.
2.5	21	Related Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference which has been assigned by the beneficiary of the undertaking or counter-undertaking.
2.6	52a	Issuer	A [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) D [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party that issued the undertaking (or counter-undertaking).
2.7	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the undertaking was issued.

2.8	59a	Beneficiary	<b>No letter option</b> [/34x] (Account) 4*35x (Name and Address) <b>A</b> [/34x] (Account) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party in whose favour the undertaking (or counter-undertaking) is issued.
2.9	56a	Advising Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the advising bank.
2.10	57a	'Advise Through' Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies an additional bank requested to advise the undertaking. RULE: If field 57a is present, then field 56a must be present.
2.11	31E	Final Date of Expiry	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the final expiry date.
2.12	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the Receiver. RULE: For MT 798<785> this field is not used
2.13	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name. CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute. GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files. RULE: For MT 798<785> this field is not used.

## MT 785 Network Validated Rules

**C1** If field 57a is present, then field 56a must be present (Error code(s): C81).

## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and receiving banks.

### Narrative

On 1 March 2020 National Westminster Bank, London notify Swiss Bank Corporation, San Francisco the following:

Please advise the following to its beneficiary by DHL courier service without any obligations on your part and without any charges for us.

quote

Advance Payment Guarantee No.PG8761234

The obligation under this guarantee shall expire on 30 June 2020 and there is no further extension allowed.

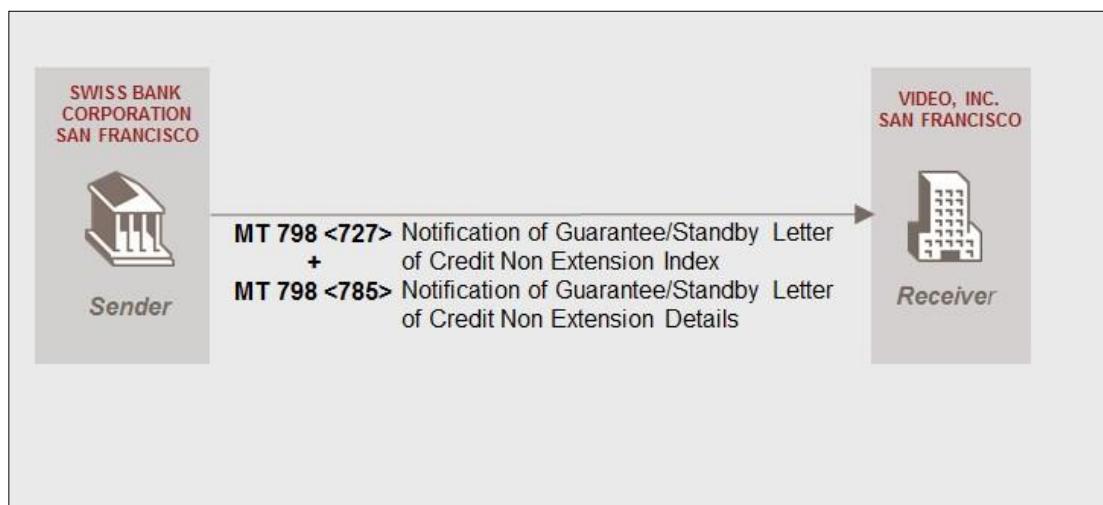
Any claim for payment complying with the above conditions must be received by us within the validity period of this guarantee.

National Westminster Bank  
London

Unquote

On the same day, Swiss Bank Corporation advises Video Inc, San Francisco about the non-extension.

### Information Flow



### SWIFT Message

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;727&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	SBCOUS66XXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	VIDEOINC
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:SBC338
Sub-message type	:12:727
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21P:38579-123 :21S:38579 :13E:202003011545

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;785&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	SBCOUS66XXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	VIDEOINC
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:SBC339
Sub-message type	:12:785
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:38579-123 :20:PG8761234 :52A:NWBKGB2LXXX :31C:200202 :59D:VIDEO, INC 2801 CONSTITUTION DRIVE US/SAN FRANCISCO, 94550 :31E:200630

## 2.3.12 Demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit

### Scope

The Demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby LC is sent by the corporate (Beneficiary) to its bank and comprises at least two MT 798 messages. These messages are used to demand payment under a guarantee and may include a request to extend the expiry date and as appropriate, to indicate availability of supporting documentation.

### Usage

A single Demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby LC message must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 712 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 765 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.

The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 765 and enveloping one MT 765 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 765 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Each MT 798 message for a single demand for Payment must be identified with the same Customer Reference Number, specified as field 21A, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

## MT 798<712> - Demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;712&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;712&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 712.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;712&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<712> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, i.e. 1/1.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the corporate customer. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer, in this case, demand reference number.
2.4	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank. GUID: It is the Advising Bank reference. If there is no Advising Bank, it is the undertaking number.
2.5	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the Undertaking as being issued.
2.6	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.
2.7	52a	Issuer	A [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) D [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the Issuer. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.8	32B	Undertaking Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the Undertaking.

2.9	53C	Settlement Account	/34x (Account)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the account number for the settlement of a claim for payment and/or any commissions and charges (in the case where the field 25A (Alternative Charges Account) is not present).
2.10	25A	Alternative Charges Account	/34x (Account)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the account number for the settlement of commissions and charges, if different from field 53C (Settlement Account).
2.11	29A	Customer Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the corporate customer.
2.12	72Z	Corporate to Bank Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the bank.
2.13	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel for the claim presentation and where appropriate, any associated file name.  CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel
2.14	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer  CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

2.15	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.16	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

## MT 798<765> - Guarantee/Standby Letter of Credit Demand Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;765&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;765&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 765.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;765&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 765]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: MT 798<765> The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798<765> in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798<765>, e.g., 2/3. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 765 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the corporate customer. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3		<b>MT 765 Message</b>		M	<b>MT 765</b> message contents. (Refer The <i>SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit</i> ) Message is expanded below for convenience
2.4	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field contains the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.
2.5	21	Related Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field contains the reference number of the undertaking by the issuing bank.
2.6	23	Beneficiary Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference which has been assigned by the beneficiary.
2.7	52a	Issuer	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party that issued the undertaking (or counter-undertaking).

2.8	59a	Beneficiary	<b>No letter option</b> [/34x] (Account) 4*35x (Name and Address) <b>A</b> [/34x] (Account) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the party in whose favour the undertaking is issued.
2.9	31L	Date of Demand	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the demand is issued by the beneficiary.
2.10	22G	Demand Type	4!c	M	DEFN: This field specifies the type of demand. CODES: PAEX = Pay Or Extend PAYM = Pay Only
2.11	32B	Demand Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency and amount of the amount claimed.
2.12	78	Additional Amount Information	12*65x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information about the demand amount.
2.13	49A	Demand Statement	4!c [50*65z] (Code) (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the narrative text that constitutes the demand. CODES: COMP = Complete demand, no other documentation to accompany or follow this message. INCP = Incomplete demand, supporting documentation to be presented separately.
2.14	77	Presentation Completion Details	20*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies information about the presentation documentation. If the presentation is incomplete, this must specify how the presentation will be completed.
2.15	31E	Requested New Date of Expiry	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the requested new expiry date as an alternative to payment of the demand.
<u>2.16</u>	<u>31R</u>	<u>Requested New Date of Expiry of Local Undertaking</u>	<u>6!n</u> <u>(Date)</u>	<u>O</u>	<u>DEFN: This field specifies (if applicable) the requested new expiry date of the local undertaking as an alternative to payment of the demand.</u>
2.1 <u>76</u>	56a	Intermediary	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>B</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) [35x] (Location) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the financial institution through which the amount claimed must pass to reach the account with institution.

2.1 <sup>87</sup>	57a	Account With Institution	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>B</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) [35x] (Location) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the financial institution at which the amount claimed is to be settled. This field must be used if there is no direct relationship between sender and receiver.
2.1 <sup>98</sup>	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the Receiver.  RULE: For MT 798<765> this field is not used
2. <sup>204</sup> <sup>9</sup>	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.  CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel  RULE: For MT 798<765> this field is not used.

#### MT 765 Network Validated Rules

C1 If field 49A is INCP, then field 77 must be present, otherwise field 77 is not allowed (Error code(s): C13).

C2 If field 22G is PAYM, then field 31E and field 31R areJis not allowed (Error code(s): C17).

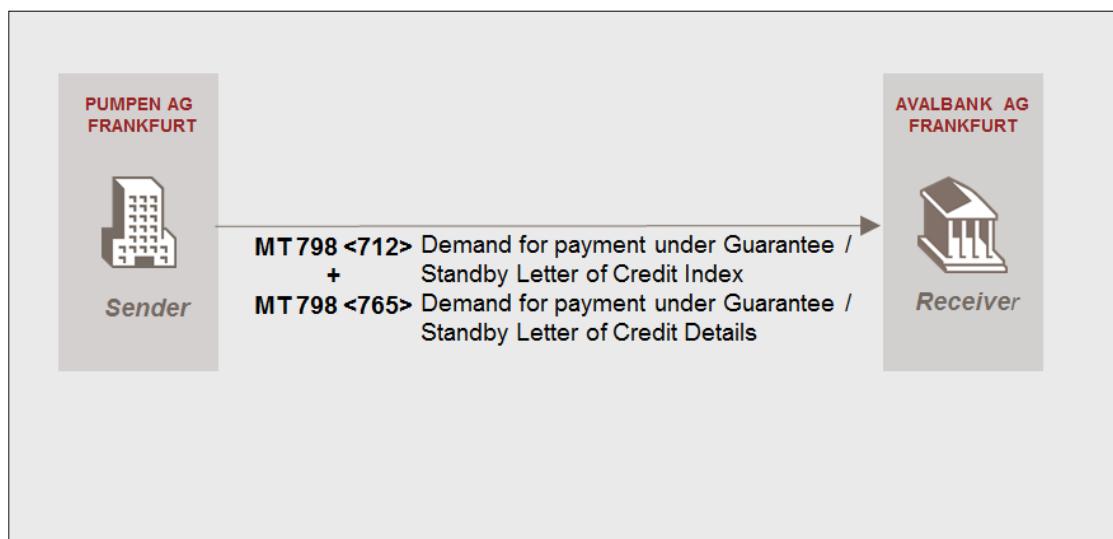
## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and receiving banks.

### Narrative

On 15th March 2020 Pumpen AG makes a demand for payment of EUR 30.000,00 under a Performance Guarantee (number MNOFFA08150) for EUR 50.000,00 issued by Avalbank AG in Frankfurt due late delivery of machinery. The following details are cited in the demand:  
Pumpen AG, Postfach 123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY, hereby makes demand for payment under Performance Guarantee No, MNOFFA08150, issued by Bank of Germany Aktiengesellschaft, Frankfurt, Germany on 28 September 2019 on behalf of Mining PLC, Main Road, Oslo NORWAY.  
Amount claimed: EUR 30.000,00 (in words: EUR thirty thousand 00/100)

### Information Flow



### SWIFT Message

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;712&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	PUMPCORP
Message Type	798
Receiver	AVALDEFFXXX
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:AVL947645
Sub-message type	:12:712
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21A:DG786889/135 :21T:DG786889 :21S:ABC66578 :31C:190928 :13E:202003151505 :32B:EUR50000,00 :23X:FACT/FILE87453298.PDF

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;765&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	PUMPCORP
Message Type	798
Receiver	AVALDEFFXXX
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:AVL947646
Sub-message type	:12:765
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21A:DG786889/135 :20:MNOFFA08150 :21:ABC6767 :52A:BOGEDEFFXXX :22G:PAYM :32B:EUR30000,00 :49A:COMP Pumpen AG, Postfach 123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY, hereby makes demand for payment under Performance Guarantee No . MNOFFA08150, issued by Bank of Germany Aktiengesellschaft, Frankfurt, Germany on 28 September 2019 on behalf of Mining PLC, Main Road, Oslo NORWAY. Amount claimed: EUR 30.000,00 (in words: EUR thirty thousand 00/100)

## 2.3.13 Demand refusal advice under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit

### Scope

The Demand refusal advice under Guarantee / Standby LC message is sent to the corporate (Beneficiary) by its bank (Advising Bank) as advice of refusal to a demand for payment under a Guarantee or Standby and comprises two MT 798 messages. It is used to notify the beneficiary that the demand on Guarantee / Standby LC has been refused.

### Usage

The series of MT 798 messages for one Demand refusal advice under Guarantee / Standby LC must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 729, and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 786 message, specific to the bank-to-corporate exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 786 and enveloping one MT 786 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 786 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Each MT 798 message for a single Demand refusal advice under Guarantee / Standby LC must be identified with the Bank Reference Number, specified as field 21P, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

## MT 798<729> - Advice of demand refusal under Guarantee / Standby LC Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;729&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;729&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 729.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;729&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

Section 2 – Field 77E Structure						
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines	
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<729> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, e.g., 1/3.	
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies an additional reference number assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.	
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies an additional reference number which may be assigned by the bank	
2.4	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a reference number assigned by the corporate customer.	
2.5	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer. In this case demand reference number.	
2.6	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the Undertaking as being issued.	
2.7	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.	
2.8	29B	Issuing/Guarantor Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the issuing/guarantor bank.	
2.9	58a	Advising Bank	A [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) D [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the advising/confirming bank, if different from the issuing/guarantor bank.	

2.10	29D	Advising Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the advising/confirming bank, if different from the issuing/guarantor bank.
2.11	50	Applicant	4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the applicant for the undertaking (i.e. the party considered by the issuing bank to be the debtor / obligor).
2.12	78B	Instructions from the Bank	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates instructions from the bank.
2.13	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate customer.
2.14	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name, for ancillary documentation / information.  CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel
2.16	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer  CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.17	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.18	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

## MT 798<786> - Advice of demand refusal under Guarantee / Standby LC Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;786&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;786&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 786.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;786&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 786]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: MT 798&lt;786&gt; The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798&lt;786&gt; in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798&lt;786&gt;, e.g., 2/3.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 786 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a reference number assigned by the bank.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 786 Message Reference Guide.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
2.3		<b>MT 786 Message</b>		M	<p><b>MT 786</b> message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)</p> <p>Fields are listed below for convenience</p>
2.4	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the unique and unambiguous undertaking identifier that is assigned by the issuer.
2.5	21	Beneficiary Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference which has been assigned by the beneficiary.
2.6	52a	Issuer	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the party that issues the undertaking (or counter-undertaking).
2.7	30	Demand Submission Date	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date the demand was submitted to the issuer of the undertaking.

2.8	32B	Demand Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency and amount that is claimed in undertaking demand.
2.9	77J	Reason for Refusal	70*50z (Narrative)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reason(s).
2.10	77B	Disposal of Documents	3*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies how the demand presentation documents will be handled as a consequence of the demand refusal.
2.11	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the Receiver. RULE: For MT 798<786> this field is not used
2.12	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name. CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel RULE: For MT 798<786> this field is not used

## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and receiving banks.

### Narrative

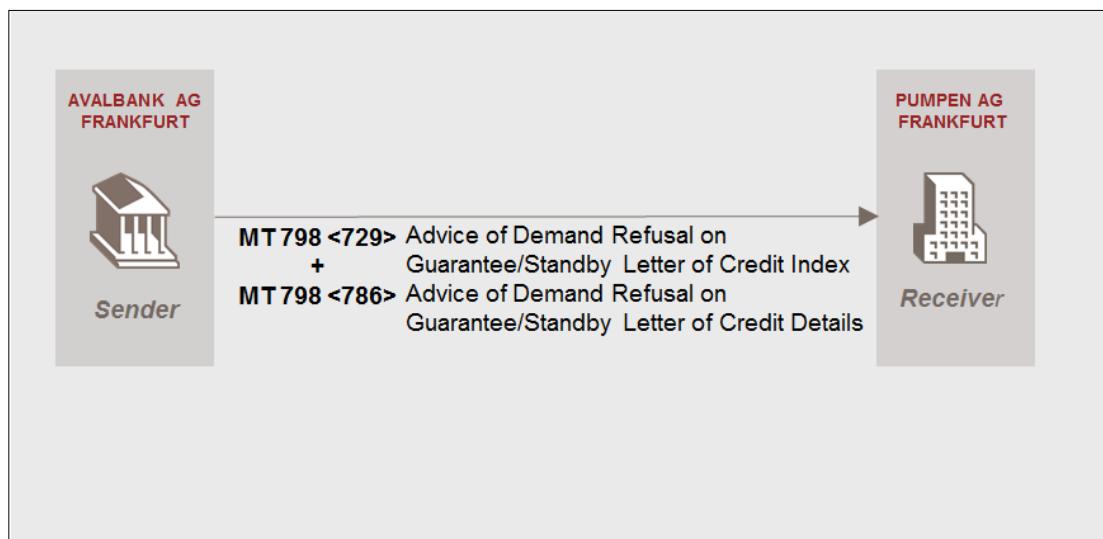
On 15th March 2020 Pumpen AG makes a demand for payment of EUR 30.000,00 under a Performance Guarantee (number MNOFFA08150) for EUR 50.000,00 issued by Avalbank AG in Frankfurt. The following details are cited in the demand:

Pumpen AG, Postfach 123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY, hereby makes demand for payment under Performance Guarantee No, MNOFFA08150, issued by Bank of Germany Aktiengesellschaft, Frankfurt, Germany on 28 September 2019 on behalf of Mining PLC, Main Road, Oslo NORWAY.

Amount claimed: EUR 30.000,00 (in words: EUR thirty thousand 00/100)

On 18<sup>th</sup> March 2020 Avalbank AG in Frankfurt receives a demand refusal from Bank of Germany Aktiengesellschaft, Frankfurt and on the same day, Avalbank AG notifies Pumpen AG about the refusal.

### Information Flow



### SWIFT Message

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;729&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	AVALDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:AVL95479
Sub-message type	:12:729
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21P:PUM33-123 :21S:PUM33 :21A:XYZ999-123 :31C:190928 :13E:202003181545

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;786&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	AVALDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:AVL95480
Sub-message type	:12:786
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:PUM33-123 :20:MNOFFA08150 :52A:BOGEDEFFXXX :30:200315 :32B:EUR30000,00 :77J:INSPECTION CERTIFICATE NOT PRESENTED :77B:/HOLD/

## 2.3.14 Acknowledgment of demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit

### Scope

The acknowledgment of demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby LC is sent to the corporate (Beneficiary) by its bank and comprises one MT 798 message. It is used to acknowledge the receipt of a claim under a Guarantee / Standby LC, and to provide further instructions and/or information as appropriate.

### Usage

An acknowledgment of demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby LC message must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 714 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for bank-to-corporate exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

## MT 798<714> - Acknowledgment of demand for payment under Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;714&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;714&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 714.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;714&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<714> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies an additional reference number assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies an additional reference number which may be assigned by the bank
2.4	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the Undertaking number which has been assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the related reference number assigned by the customer.
2.6	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer, in this case demand reference number.
2.7	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the Guarantee / Standby LC as being issued.
2.8	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.
2.9	32B	Undertaking Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the Undertaking.
2.10	31S	Date of Demand	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the bank considers the claim as being received.

2.11	34D	Amount Claimed	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency and amount of the amount claimed.
2.12	78B	Instructions from the Bank	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates instructions from the bank.
2.13	29B	Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the bank.
2.14	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate customer.
2.15	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul>
2.16	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.17	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.18	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and receiving banks.

### Narrative

On 15th March 2020 Avalbank AG in Frankfurt acknowledges receipt of a guarantee claim from Pumpen AG demanding payment of EUR 30,000.00 under a Performance Guarantee (number MNOFFA08150) for EUR 50.000,00, issued by Avalbank AG in Frankfurt on 28 September 2019.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;714&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	AVALDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:CV/KJ76588
Sub-message type	:12:714
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21P:MNOFFA08150/03 :21S:MNOFFA08150 :20:MNOFFA08150 :21A:DG786889/135 :21T:XZZ888 :31C:190928 :13E:202003151716 :32B:EUR50000,00 :31S:200315 :34D:EUR30000,00

### **2.3.15 Notification of demand for payment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit**

**Scope**

The Notification of demand for Payment of Guarantee is sent to the corporate (Applicant) by their bank and comprises one MT 798 message. This message is used by the bank to notify the corporate that the bank has received a demand for payment under a specified Guarantee / Standby LC.

**Usage**

A single Notification of demand of Payment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit message must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 779 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for bank-to-corporate exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.
- The second, optional, MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 765 and enveloping one MT 765 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 765 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

**MT 798<779> - Notification of demand for payment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Index**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;779&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;779&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 779.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;779&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<779> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, for example 1/1 or 1/2.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer, in this case demand reference number.
2.4	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.5	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.6	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank.
2.7	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.8	31C	Date of Demand for Payment	6!n (Date)	M	This field specifies the date of the Demand for Payment. RULE: The required format is: YYMMDD
2.9	34D	Amount Claimed	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency and amount of the amount claimed.
2.10	49J	Text of Claim for Payment	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates the text of the claim for payment.
2.11	78B	Instructions from the Bank	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates instructions from the sender bank.
2.12	29B	Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the bank

2.13	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains additional information for the Receiver.
2.14	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file nameshould be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.15	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.16	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.17	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<765> - Notification of Demand for payment of Guarantee / Letter of Credit Demand Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;765&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;765&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 765.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;765&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 765]					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: MT 798<765> The message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798<765> in the series and be incremented by 1 for the subsequent MT 798<765>, for example 2/2. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 765 Message Reference Guide.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a reference number assigned by the bank. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 765 Message Reference Guide.
2.3		<b>MT 765 Message</b>		O	<b>MT 765</b> message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)

## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and receiving banks.

### Narrative

On 30th January 2020 Avalbank AG in Frankfurt receives a claim for payment under its Performance Guarantee number PGFFA0815 from the beneficiary of the guarantee with the following details:

Date: 25.01.2020

Re: Your Performance Guarantee No . PGFFA0815 issued on 6th May 2019 for EUR 50.000,00 in favour of Mining PLC, Main Road, Oslo NORWAY, on behalf of Pumpen AG, Postfach 123, 60599 Frankfurt, GERMANY – concerning the delivery of pumps and equipment as per contract number ABC123 dated 5th February 2019.

Dear Sirs,

We hereby declare that Messrs. Pumpen AG has failed to deliver the goods as per the terms of the above mentioned contract.

Consequently please pay EURO 50.000,00 to our account no. 123 with Viking Bank Ltd. in Oslo.

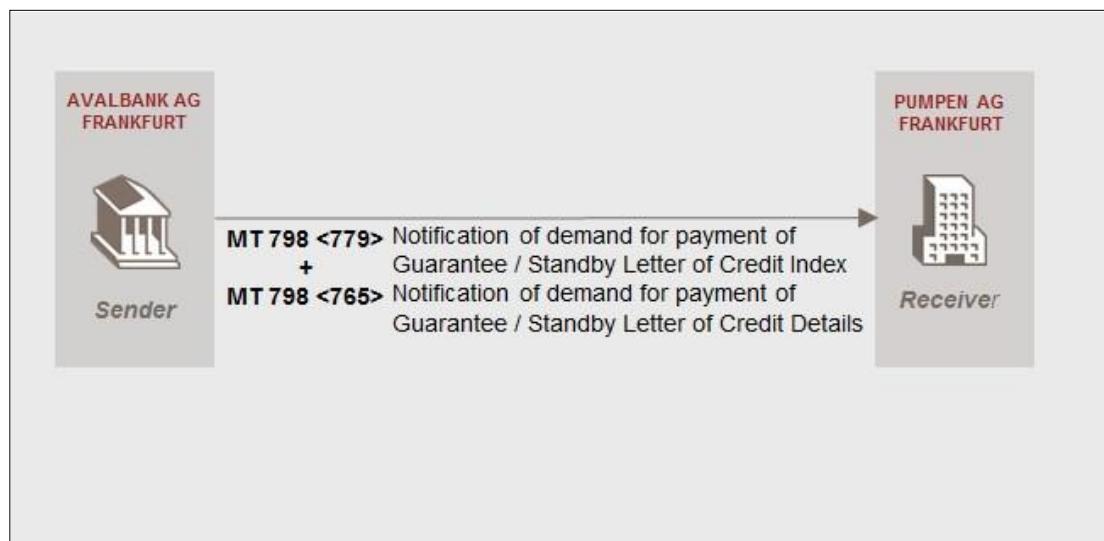
Yours faithfully

Mining PLC

Oslo / NORWAY

On the same day Avalbank AG notifies the Applicant (i.e. Pumpen AG) about the claim for payment.

### Information Flow



### SWIFT Message

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;779&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	AVALDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:AVL95462
Sub-message type	:12:779
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21A:XYZ999-123 :21P:AVL95462-123 :21S:AVL95462 :20:AVL95462 :13E:202001251313 :31C:190125 :34D:EUR50000,00

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;765&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	AVALDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:AVL95463
Sub-message type	:12:765
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:AVL95462-123 :20:PGFFA0815 :52A:BOGEDEFFXXX :22G:PAYM :32B:EUR50000,00 :49A:COMP We, Mining PLC hereby declare that Messrs. Pumpen AG has failed to deliver the goods as per the terms of the Contract No. ABC 123 dated 5th February 2019. :57A:/123 VIKIOSLOXXX

## 2.3.16 Settlement of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit claim for payment and/or charges

### Scope

The Settlement of Guarantee / Standby LC claim for payment and/or Charges under a specified Guarantee/Standby LC is sent by the bank to the corporate (Applicant) and comprises one MT 798 message. This message is used by the bank to inform the Applicant about the details of the settlement of a claim for payment and/or the settlement of commission and charges.

Note: In line with market practice, settlement information may be reported in multiple settlement messages, for example counterparty commission and charges in one message and own commission and charges in a subsequent second message.

### Usage

A single Settlement of Guarantee / Standby LC claim for payment and/or charges message must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 781 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for bank-to-corporate exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

**MT 798<781> - Settlement of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit claim for payment and/or charges Index**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;781&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;781&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 781.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <span style="color:red">[n*78z][n*145z]</span> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;781&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<781> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the related reference number which has been assigned by the customer.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.5	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.6	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank.
2.7	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.8	12R	Reason for Message	4!c/[35x] (Code) [/Narrative]	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reason for the message. CODES: PAYM = ADVICE OF PAYMENT CHGS = ADVICE OF COMMISSIONS/CHARGES BOTH = ADVICE OF PAYMENT AND COMMISSIONS/CHARGES
2.9	34D	Amount Claimed	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency and amount of the amount claimed. RULE: this field must be present if field 12R is PAYM or BOTH
2.10	34K	Counterparty Commission and Charges	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency and amount of the counterparty commission and charges.

2.11	34L	Total Amount Claimed	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency and the total amount claimed. The total amount is calculated from amount of the counterparty commission and charges (34K) plus the amount claimed (34D).
2.12	34M	Own Commission and Charges	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency and amount of the own commission and charges, without any Guarantee / Standby LC commission.

2.13	71B	Details of Commission and Charges	6*35x (Narrative) or /8a/1a/[3!a13d][Narrative] (Code)(Currency) (Amount)(Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the details of the commissions and charges in free text or coded form.</p> <p><b>CODES:</b></p> <p>ACGH = AUTOMATIC BOOKING OF CHARGES. Periodical commission/charges, per quarter, or per month, etc.</p> <p>AMND = AMENDMENT CHARGES</p> <p>ATER = ADJUSTMENT OF TERMS CHARGES Adjustment of commission rate (increase), adjustment of commission period, etc.</p> <p>CLOS = CLOSURE CHARGES. Special charges for cancelling the guarantee</p> <p>CORR = CORRECTION CHARGES. Adjustment of charges having been debited for wrong amount or even charge not applicable. May only be positive.</p> <p>INTC = INTEREST CHARGES</p> <p>ISSU = ISSUANCE CHARGES</p> <p>OTHR = MISCELLANEOUS/OTHER CHARGES. Manual booking of charges, etc.</p> <p>POST = Postal charges</p> <p>REDN = REDUCTION CHARGES. Charges/commission related to reduction based on a reduction clause</p> <p>RELS = RELEASE CHARGES. cancel before expiry / open ended UNDK (liability release from beneficiary) - commission in arrears</p> <p>STAMP = Stamp duty</p> <p>TAXES = Taxes</p> <p>TELECHAR = Telecommunication</p> <p><b>CODES for Bank:</b></p> <p>B= charged by the bank sending the message</p> <p>O= charged by another bank than the bank sending the message.</p> <p>GUID: negative adjustments must be specified in field 34T</p>
------	-----	-----------------------------------	--	---	---

2.14	34S	Debit Undertaking Commission	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency and amount of the Guarantee / Standby LC commission which will be debited.
2.15	34T	Refund Undertaking Commission	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency and amount of the Guarantee / Standby LC commission which will be refunded.
2.16	12S	Amount Specification for Undertaking Commission	4!c (Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the amount of the Guarantee / Standby LC commission, if applicable.  CODES: FLAT = FLAT AMOUNT MINI = MINIMUM AMOUNT MAXI = MAXIMUM AMOUNT
2.17	31J	Calculation From	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date from which the Guarantee / Standby LC commission was calculated.  RULE: The required format is: YYMMDD
2.18	31K	Calculation To	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date to which the Guarantee / Standby LC commission was calculated.  RULE: The required format is: YYMMDD
2.19	37J	Undertaking Commission in Percent	12d	O	DEFN: This field specifies the Guarantee / Standby LC commission in percent. The interest rate represents per annum rate.  GUID: The indication in percent may consist of 3 decimal places and up to 8 fractional places.
2.20	34U	Base Amount for Calculation of Undertaking Commission	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency and amount which was used as the base amount for the calculation of the Guarantee / Standby LC commission.
2.21	53C	Settlement Account	/34x (Account)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the account number for the settlement of a claim for payment and/or any commissions and charges (in the case where the field 25A (Alternative Charges Account) is not present).  GUID: For MT 798<781> for accounts serviced in countries that have implemented IBAN, the IBAN should be used to identify the account.

2.22	34V	Total Amount Settlement Account	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the currency and the total amount that is debited or credited to the settlement account.
2.23	25A	Alternative Charges Account	/34x (Account)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the account number for the settlement of commissions and charges, if different from field 53C (Settlement Account).  GUID: For MT 798<781> for accounts serviced in countries that have implemented IBAN, the IBAN should be used to identify the account.
2.24	34W	Total Amount Alternative Charges Account	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the currency and the total amount that is debited or credited to the alternative charges account.
2.25	30	Value Date	6!n (Date)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the value date.  RULE: This field must be present, if field 53C or field 25A is present. RULE: The required format is: YYMMDD
2.26	36	Exchange Rate	12d	O	DEFN: This field specifies the exchange rate used to convert a foreign currency.
2.27	34X	Countervalue in Local Currency	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the countervalue of the converted foreign currency in local currency.
2.28	78B	Instructions from the Bank	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field indicates instructions from the sender bank.
2.29	29B	Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the bank.
2.30	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains additional information from the bank to the corporate (Applicant).

2.31	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p><b>CODES:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p><b>RULE:</b> The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p><b>GUID:</b> The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.32	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p><b>CODES:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p><b>RULE:</b> Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.33	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p><b>RULE:</b> Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.34	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p><b>RULE:</b> Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## Business Example - 1

Booking of own commission and charges as well as guarantee commission after issuance of the guarantee.

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and receiving banks.

### Narrative

On 1st February 2020, Avalbank AG in Frankfurt issues its Performance Guarantee number PGFFA0815 for EUR 150.000,00 valid until 31/12/2020 (customer reference XYZ999).

On the same day Avalbank AG in Frankfurt informs the applicant (Pumpen AG in Frankfurt) about the commission and charges booked in connection with the issuance of the guarantee.

The following applies:

Issuance Commission in the amount of EUR 150,00

SWIFT/Telex costs in the amount of EUR 20,00

Postage in the amount of EUR 8,50

Guarantee Commission in the amount of 1 % for the first half year (until 30/06/2020) in advance, i.e. a total of EUR 625,00

The commission and charges will be debited – according to the agreement with the applicant – to its account DE10500999000105461321.

The booking is done with value date 01/02/2020.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;781&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	AVALDEFFXXX
Message Type	781
Receiver	PUMPCORP
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:AVL95644
Sub-message type	:12:781
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21T:XYZ999 :21P:ABC66578-123 :21S:ABC66578 :20:PGFFA0815 :13E:202001251745 :12R:CHGS :34M:EUR178,50 :71B:/ISSU/B/EUR150,00 /TELECHAR/B/EUR20,00 /POST/B/EUR8,50 :34S:EUR625,00 :31J:200201 :31K:200630 :37J:1,0 :34U:EUR150000,00 :53C:/DE10500999000105461321 :34V:EUR803,50 :30:200201

**Business Example - 2**

Automatic booking of the guarantee commission for the next accounting period.

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and receiving banks.

**Narrative**

The Avalbank AG in Frankfurt did already charge the guarantee commission for the first half year for its Performance Guarantee number PGFFA0815 (customer reference XYZ999) in the amount of EUR 150.000,00 valid until 31/12/2020.

On 1st July 2020, the guarantee commission the second half year is automatically booked.

The following applies:

Guarantee Commission in the amount of 1 % for the second half year (until 31/12/2020) in advance, i.e. a total of EUR 750,00

The commission and charges will be debited – according to the agreement with the applicant – to its account DE10500999000105461321.

The booking is done with value date 01/07/2020.

**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;781&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	AVALDEFFXXX
Message Type	781
Receiver	PUMPCORP
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:AVL95644
Sub-message type	:12:781
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21T:XYZ999 :21P:ABC66578-123 :21S:ABC66578 :20:PGFFA0815 :13E:202001251423 :12R:CHGS :34D:EUR750,00 :71B:/ACGH/B/ EUR750,00 :31J:200701 :31K:201231 :37J:1,0 :34U:EUR150000,00 :53C:/DE10500999000105461321 :34V:EUR750,00 :30:200701

**Business Example - 3**

Proportional refund of the guarantee commission due to premature settlement of the guarantee.

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and receiving banks.

**Narrative**

The Avalbank AG in Frankfurt did already charge the guarantee commission until the expiry of the guarantee for its Performance Guarantee number PGFFA0815 (customer reference XYZ999) in the amount of EUR 150.000,00 valid until 31/12/2020.

On 31st July 2020, Avalbank AG receives the original of the guarantee from the beneficiary and the applicant is released of all its liability with effect from 1st August 2020.

The following applies:

Guarantee Commission in the amount of 1 % for the period from 01/08/2020 until 31/12/2020, i.e. a total of EUR 625,00

The commission and charges will be credited – according to the agreement with the applicant – to its account DE10500999000105461321.

The booking is done with value date 01/08/2020.

**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 3 MT 798 &lt;781&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	AVALDEFFXXX
Message Type	781
Receiver	PUMPCORP
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:AVL95644
Sub-message type	:12:781
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21T:XYZ999 :21P:ABC66578-123 :21S:ABC66578 :20:PGFFA0815 :13E:202001251111 :12R:CHGS :34T:EUR625,00 :31J:200801 :31K:201231 :37J:1,0 :34U:EUR150000,00 :53C:/DE10500999000105461321 :34V:EUR625,00 :30:200801

**Business Example - 4**

Settlement of a claim for payment under a guarantee, booking of own and counterparty commission and charges as well as proportional refund of the guarantee commission.

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and receiving banks.

**Narrative**

With effect from 01st August 2020, Avalbank AG in Frankfurt receives a claim for payment in the amount of EUR 150.000,00 under its Performance Guarantee number PGFFA0815 (customer reference XYZ999).

On the same day Avalbank AG in Frankfurt informs the applicant (Pumpen AG in Frankfurt) about the amounts including the commission and charges booked in connection with the claim for payment.

The following applies:

Amount claimed: EUR 150.000,00

Counterparty Charges for the amount of EUR 75,00

Claim for payment Commission in the amount of EUR 350,00

SWIFT/Telex costs in the amount of EUR 20,00

Refund of Guarantee Commission in the amount of 1 % for the period from 01/08/2020 until 31/12/2020, i.e. a total of EUR 625,00

The amount claimed will be debited – according to the agreement with the applicant – to its account DE10500999000105461321.

The commission and charges will be debited and credited – according to the agreement with the applicant – to the same account.

The booking is done with value date 01/08/2020.

#### **SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message –4 MT 798 &lt;781&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	AVALDEFFXXX
Message Type	781
Receiver	PUMPCORP
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:AVL95644
Sub-message type	:12:781
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21T:XYZ999 :21P:ABC66578-123 :21S:ABC66578 :20:PGFFA0815 :13E:202001250909 :12R:CLAM :34D:EUR150000,00 :34K:EUR75,00 :34L:EUR150075,00 :34M:EUR370,00 :71B:/CLAIMCHG/EUR350,00 /TELECHAR/EUR20,00 :53C:/DE10500999000105461321 :34V:EUR150445,00 :30:200801

### **2.3.17 Request for Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Reduction / Release**

#### **Scope**

The Request for Guarantee / Standby LC Reduction / Release is sent by the corporate (Applicant) to their bank and comprises one MT 798 message. This message is used by the Applicant to request that it be released of all liability for the specified amount.

Note: In order to change just the amount of the Guarantee / Standby LC the message MT 798 <763 / 767> "Request for Amendment of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit" is to be used.

#### **Usage**

A single Request for Guarantee / Standby LC Reduction / Release message must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 783 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for corporate-to-bank exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

## MT 798<783> - Request for Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Reduction / Release Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message. GUID: For MT 798<783> this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension). RULE: For MT 798<783> the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 783.
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver. RULE: For MT 798<783> the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<783> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer, in this case reduction reference number.
2.4	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.5	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank.
2.6	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.7	33B	Amount Reduced or Released	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	M	DEFN: This field contains the currency and amount for which the corporate requests to be released of all its liability under the specified Guarantee / Standby LC.

2.8	12F	Reason for Reduction/Release	4!c (Code)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reason for reduction/release.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <p>BUFI = UNDERLYING BUSINESS FINISHED WOEX = WARRANTY OBLIGATION PERIOD EXPIRED NOAC = NON ACCEPTANCE OF A TENDER REFU = REDUCTION CLAUSE FULFILLED OTHR = OTHER</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;783&gt;, if the code 'OTHR' is used, the reason must be specified in field 49K in free text form.</p>
2.9	49K	Other Reason for Reduction/Release	6*65x (Narrative)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies any other reason for reduction/release in free text form.</p> <p>RULE: MT 798&lt;783&gt;, This field must be present, if field 12F consists of 'OTHR'.</p>
2.10	29A	Customer Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the corporate.
2.11	72Z	Corporate to Bank Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains additional information for the Receiver.
2.12	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <p>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel</p> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>

2.13	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.14	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.15	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

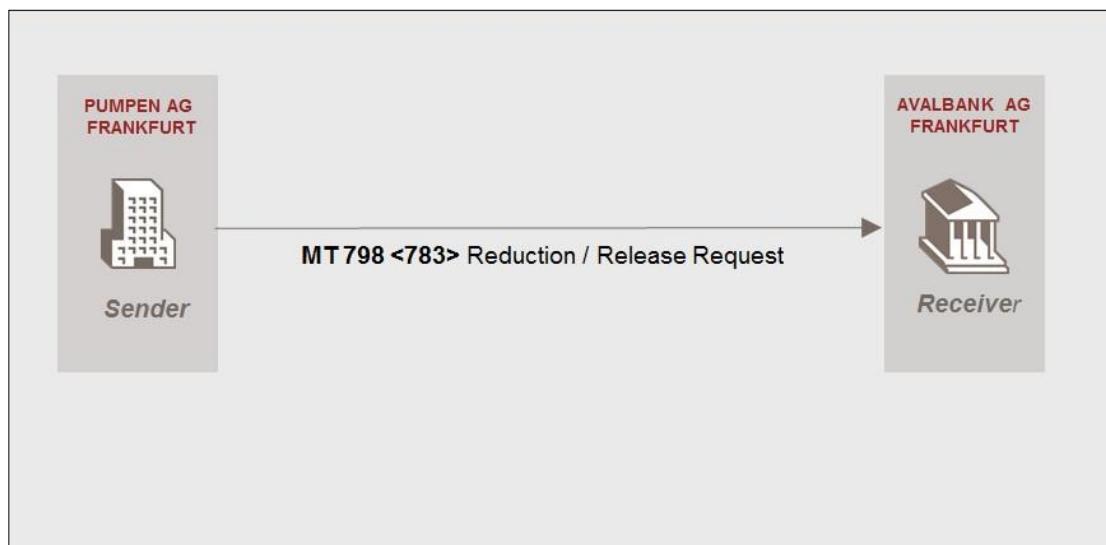
## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and receiving banks.

### Narrative

On 15th January 2020, Pumpen AG requests its bank, i.e. Avalbank AG in Frankfurt to release them of all liability of their Performance Guarantee number PGFFA0815 for EUR 50.000,00 (customer reference number XYZ999), since the underlying business is finished.

### Information Flow



### SWIFT Messages

SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 <783>	
Explanation	Format
Sender	PUMPCORP
Message Type	798
Receiver	AVALDEFFXXX
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:AVL947678
Sub-message type	:12:783
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21A:XYZ999-123 :21T:XYZ999 :21S:ABC66578 :20:PGFFA0815 :13E:202001261614 :33B:EUR50000,00 :12F:BUFI

## 2.3.18 Advice of Guarantee / Standby Letter of Credit Reduction or Release

### Scope

The Advice of Guarantee / Standby LC Reduction or Release is sent to the corporate (applicant) by their bank and comprises at least two MT 798 messages. These messages are used to advise the reduction in or release of liability for the specified amount, for either a previously issued Guarantee or a previously issued Standby Letter of Credit.

### Usage

A single Advice of Guarantee / Standby LC Reduction or Release must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 766 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 769 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 769 and enveloping one MT 769 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 769 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Each MT 798 messages for a single Advice of Reduction or Release must be identified with the same Customer Reference Number, specified as field 21A, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

## MT 798<766> - Advice of Guarantee / Standby Reduction or Release Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;766&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;766&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 766.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;766&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
<b>No.</b>	<b>Tag</b>	<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Format</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines</b>
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<766> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, i.e. 1/2.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer. RULE: this reference must be filled if this message is a response to a request from the corporate. INFO: this message could be a reply to a request from the corporate, or sent by the bank without a prior request. In the latter case, there is no technical reference to input in this field.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer, in this case reduction reference number.
2.4	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.5	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.6	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank.
2.8	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.9	29B	Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the bank
2.10	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains additional information for the Receiver.

2.11	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.12	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.13	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.14	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

**MT 798<769> - Advice of Guarantee / Standby Reduction or Release Details**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;769&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;769&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 769.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <span style="color:red">[n*78z][n*145z]</span> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;769&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 769]</b>															
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines										
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: MT 798<769> The message index number must have a fixed value of 2, i.e. 2/2. NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 769 Message Reference Guide.										
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.										
2.3		<b>MT 769 Message</b>		M	MT 769 message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit) <i>Fields listed here below for convenience.</i> RULE: The following fields in the MT 769 message may not have relevance in bank-to-corporate exchanges and as a consequence might not be used: <table> <thead> <tr> <th>Tag</th> <th>Field Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>25</td> <td>Account Identification</td> </tr> <tr> <td>32a</td> <td>Amount of Charges</td> </tr> <tr> <td>57a</td> <td>Account With Bank</td> </tr> <tr> <td>71D</td> <td>Details of Charges</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Tag	Field Name	25	Account Identification	32a	Amount of Charges	57a	Account With Bank	71D	Details of Charges
Tag	Field Name														
25	Account Identification														
32a	Amount of Charges														
57a	Account With Bank														
71D	Details of Charges														
2.4	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field contains the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.										
2.5	21	Related Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field contains the reference number of the guarantee or request for the issuance of a guarantee to which this message is related.										
2.6	25	Account Identification	35x	O	DEFN: When the Sender has debited the account of the Receiver for its charges, that is, field 32D is used, this field identifies the number of the account which has been debited.										

2.7	30	Date of Reduction or Release	6!n	O	DEFN: This field specifies the date as of which the bank which has issued or requested the issuance of the guarantee, that is, the Receiver, is released of all its liability under the specified guarantee for the amount specified in field 33B or 39C.
2.8	32a	Amount of Charges	B 3!a15d D 6!n3!a15d	O	DEFN: This field specifies the currency code and total amount of charges claimed by the Sender of the message.
2.9	33B	Amount Reduced or Released	3!a15d	O	DEFN: This field specifies the currency code and amount for which the bank which has issued or requested the issuance of the guarantee is released of all its liability under the specified guarantee.
2.10	34B	Amount Outstanding	3!a15d	O	DEFN: When the liability under the specified guarantee is not to be released in its entirety, this field specifies the currency code and amount outstanding.
2.11	39C	Amount Specification	4*35x	O	DEFN: This field contains a description of the amount for which the bank which has issued or requested the issuance of the guarantee is released of all its liability under the specified guarantee.
2.12	57a	Account with Bank	A [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)  B [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) [35x] (Location)  D [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x(Name and Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the bank at which the Sender wishes to receive credit for charges claimed in field 32a.
2.13	71D	Details of Charges	6*35z	O	DEFN: This field contains the specific details of commission and charges claimed by the Sender in field 32a.
2.14	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z	O	DEFN: This field contains additional information for the Receiver.
2.15	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name or reference.  RULE: For MT 798<769> this field is not used.

### MT 769 Network Validated Rules

C1 Either field 25 or 57a, but not both, may be present (Error code(s): C77).

**C2** Either field 33B or field 39C, but not both, must be present (Error code(s): C34).

**C3** If field 32D is present, then field 57a must not be present (Error code(s): C78).

**C4** If field 71D is present, then field 32a must also be present (Error code(s): C33).

**C5** The currency code in the amount fields 33B and 34B must be the same (Error code(s): C02).

## Business Example

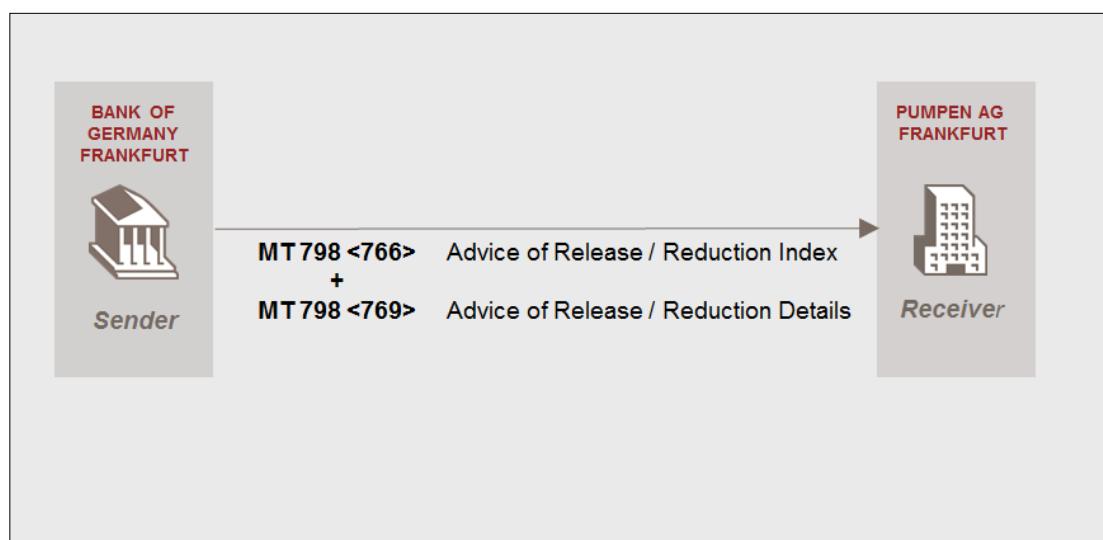
Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and receiving banks.

### Narrative

On 10th July 2020, Bank of Germany AG in Frankfurt informs its customer Pumpen AG that it has been released of all its liability under the Performance Guarantee number PGFFA0815 (customer reference number XYZ999) for an amount of EUR 50.000,00.

The outstanding guarantee amount is EUR 0,00.

### Information Flow



### SWIFT Messages

SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 <766>	
Explanation	Format
Sender	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:DAS96372
Sub-message type	:12:766
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21T:XYZ999 :21P:34567AC1-123 :21S:34567AC1 :20:PGFFA0815 :13E:202007101145

<b>SWIFT Message - 2 MT 798 &lt;769&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	BOGEDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
<b>Message Text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:DAS96372
Sub-message type	:12:769
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:34567AC1-123 :20:HGB77666 :21:PGFFA0815 :30:200710 :33B:EUR50000, :34B:EUR0,

## 2.4 Common Group Messages

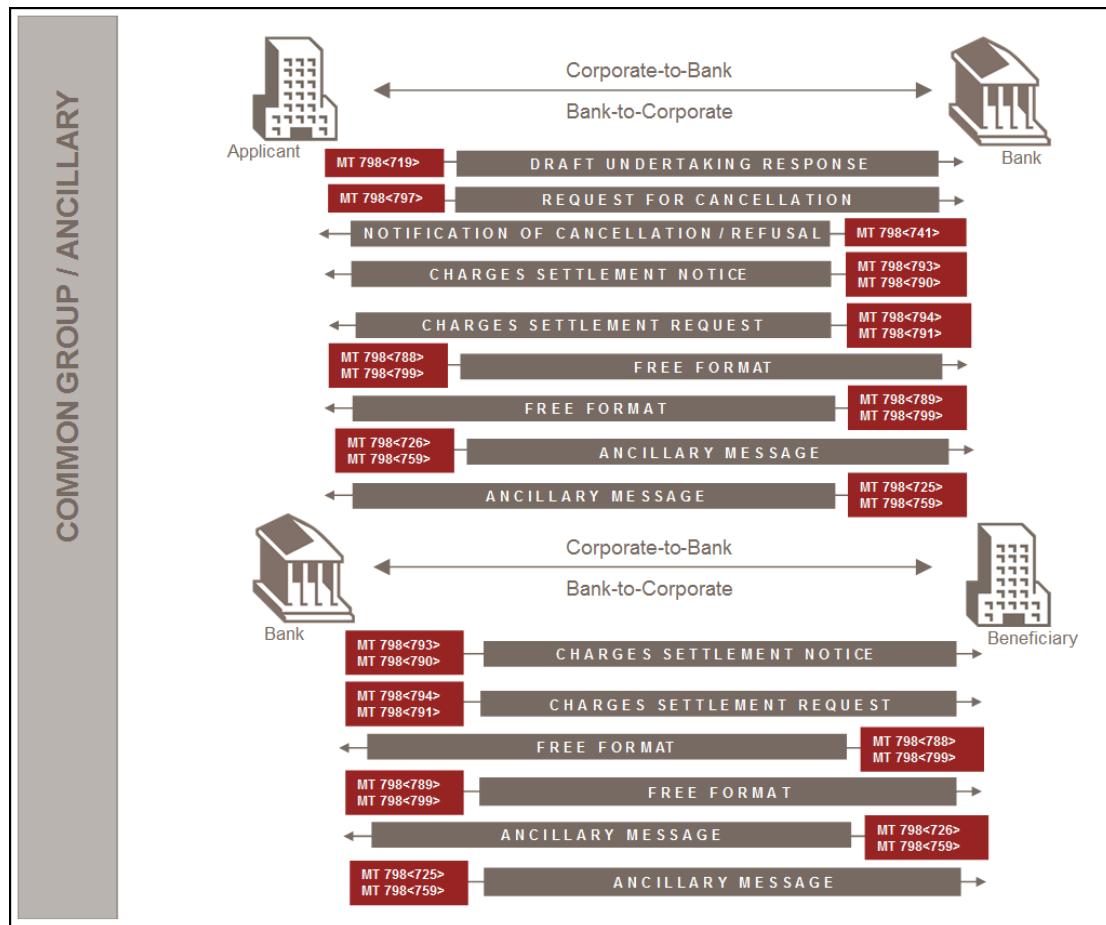
This section covers the Common Group Messages that may be used in a corporate-to-bank and bank-to-corporate environment to send or receive information for which another message type is not applicable.

- Response to a Draft Undertaking – Corporate-to-Bank
- Request for Cancellation – Corporate-to-Bank
- Notification of Cancellation / Refusal – Bank-to-Corporate
- Notification of Settlement of Charges – Bank-to-Corporate
- Request for Settlement of Charges – Bank-to-Corporate
- Free Format Message – Corporate-to-Bank
- Free Format Message – Bank-to-Corporate
- Ancillary Message – Corporate-to-Bank
- Ancillary Message – Bank-to-Corporate

The *SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit* serves as the main document describing the standards. For more information, see this handbook. In addition, the following implementation conventions apply:

- There are no network validated rules for the MT 798, nor for the enveloped message within the MT 798. In implementation, the network validated rules as specified in the latest SWIFT User Handbook for the enveloped message (e.g., MT 700 - Issue of a Documentary Credit) should be adhered to, unless otherwise stated in this section of the guide,
- Both the usage rules and usage guidelines as specified in the latest SWIFT User Handbook for the enveloped message should be adhered to, unless otherwise stated in this section of the guide.

The following diagram depicts the transaction flows:



The following table indicates the composition of the individual transaction flows:

<b>Common Group</b>					
<b>MT Message Type</b>	<b>Sub- Message Type</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Max. Occur</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Base Message Type</b>
<b>Response to a Draft Undertaking – C2B</b>					
MT 798	719	M	1	Response to a Draft Undertaking Index	
<b>Request for Cancellation – C2B</b>					
MT 798	797	M	1	Request for Cancellation Index	
<b>Notification of Cancellation / Refusal– B2C</b>					
MT 798	741	M	1	Notification of Cancellation / Refusal Index	
<b>Notification of Settlement of Charges – B2C</b>					
MT 798	793	M	1	Charges Settlement Notice Index	
MT 798	790	M	1	Charges Settlement Notice Details	MT 790
<b>Request for Settlement of Charges – B2C</b>					
MT 798	794	M	1	Charges Settlement Request Index	
MT 798	791	M	1	Charges Settlement Request Details	MT 791
<b>Free Format Message – C2B</b>					
MT 798	788	M	1	Free Format Message Index	
MT 798	799	M	8	Free Format Message Details	MT 799
<b>Free Format Message – B2C</b>					
MT 798	789	M	1	Free Format Message Index	
MT 798	799	M	8	Free Format Message Details	MT 799
<b>Ancillary Message – C2B</b>					
MT 798	726	M	1	Ancillary Message Index	
MT 798	759	M	8	Ancillary Message Details	MT 759
<b>Ancillary Message – B2C</b>					
MT 798	725	M	1	Ancillary Message Index	
MT 798	759	M	8	Ancillary Message Details	MT 759

The following legend applies for the above table and the subsequent format and field specifications. The full rules for the notation of components inside messages and fields can be found in the SWIFT User Handbook.

<b>Legend</b>		
<b>Status</b>	M	Mandatory
	O	Optional
<b>Usage Details</b>	DEFN	Definition
	RULE	Usage Rule. Must be adhered to
	GUID	Usage Guidance. Recommended practice
	CODE	Applicable Code Values
	NOTE	Remark
<b>Format</b>	a	alphabetic, capital letters (A through Z), upper case only
	c	alpha-numeric capital letters (upper case), and digits only
	n	numeric, digits (0 through 9) only
	x	SWIFT X set: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• A to Z</li><li>• a to z</li><li>• 0 to 9</li><li>• / - ? : ( ) . , ' + SPACE CrLf</li></ul>
	!	fixed length
	d	decimals, including decimal comma ',' preceding the fractional part. The fractional part may be missing, but the decimal comma must always be present
<b>Codes</b>	I	or

## 2.4.1 Response to a Draft Undertaking

### Scope

The Response to a Draft Undertaking is sent by the corporate (applicant) to its bank and comprises one MT 798 message. It is used to provide instructions to the bank on the handling of a draft undertaking previously sent by the bank.

### Usage

A Response to a Draft Undertaking must comprise:

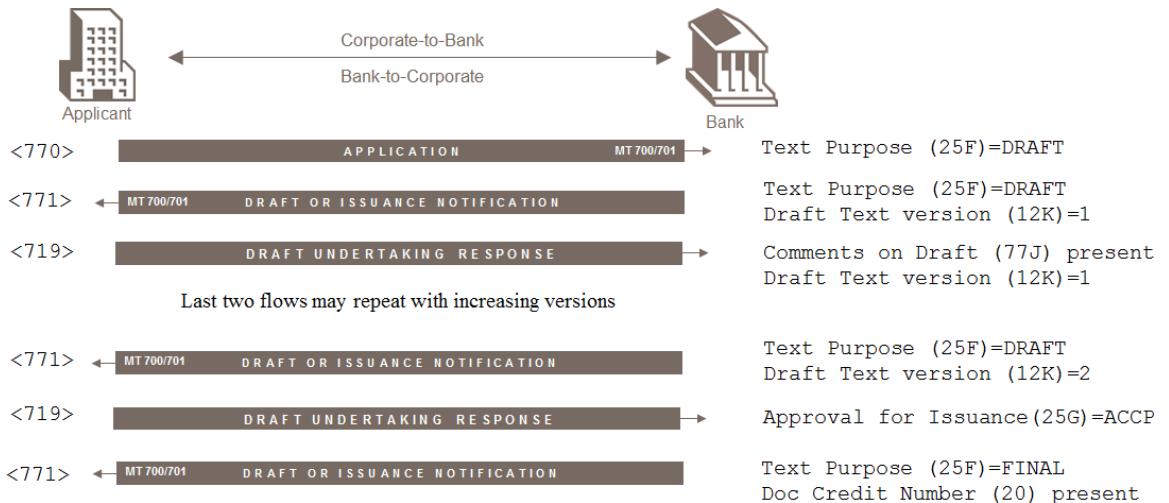
- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 719 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for corporate-to-bank exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.

Dates defined as 6!n must be in the form of YYMMDD. Dates defined as 8!n must be in the form of YYYYMMDD.

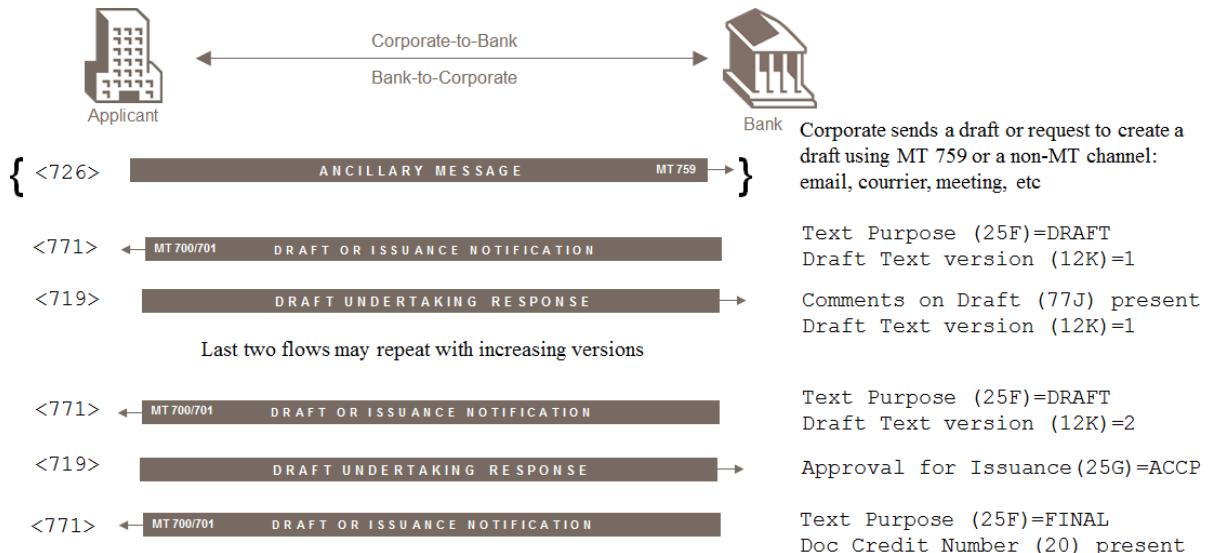
Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

This message can be used in the following scenarios:

Scenario with an initial “Application” flow



#### Scenario without an initial “Application” flow



For demand guarantees/standby LCs:

- The Application flow <770> is replaced by <784>
- The Draft or Issuance Notification <771> is replaced by <762>.

In case of application to issue a dependent undertaking (DEPU in field 22D of 760), the drafting flow will use MT 798 <784, 760, (761)>, <762, 760, (761)>, <719> as for independent undertakings. If the bank issues a dependent undertaking, it will notify the issuance by MT 798 <762, 760, (761)> to the corporate. If the dependent undertaking is issued by paper, the bank could also provide a paper copy to the applicant. If the dependent undertaking is issued and sent

electronically by swift to another bank, it must be by 759 as it cannot be issued by 760. The different elements agreed during the drafting in sequence B of 760 will be copied in field 45D of 759 and sent to another bank (please note that this is not the majority, many dependent undertakings are issued domestically and/or on paper; amendments to dependent undertakings are also less frequent than amendments to LCs or standby LCs).

## MT 798<719> - Response to a Draft Undertaking Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;719&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;719&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 719.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;719&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<719> the message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the customer. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank
2.5	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.6	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used for other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.
2.7	12K	Draft Text Version	2!n (Number)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the draft text version (sent by the bank) that this message relates to.
2.8	25G	Approval for Issuance	4!c (Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies that the corporate requests the bank to issue the undertaking as it has been proposed in the latest draft CODES: ACCP = ACCEPTED RULE: Field 25G or field 77J must be present, but not both.

2.9	77J	Comments on Draft Undertaking	70*50z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field contains the comments from the corporate on the draft undertaking, including requested changes.  RULE: Field 25G or field 77J must be present, but not both.
2.10	72Z	Corporate to Bank Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the bank.
2.11	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)( File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name, for ancillary documentation / information.  CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel
2.12	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer  CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.13	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.14	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

## Business Example

Please note that for the following examples, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the transfer requested.

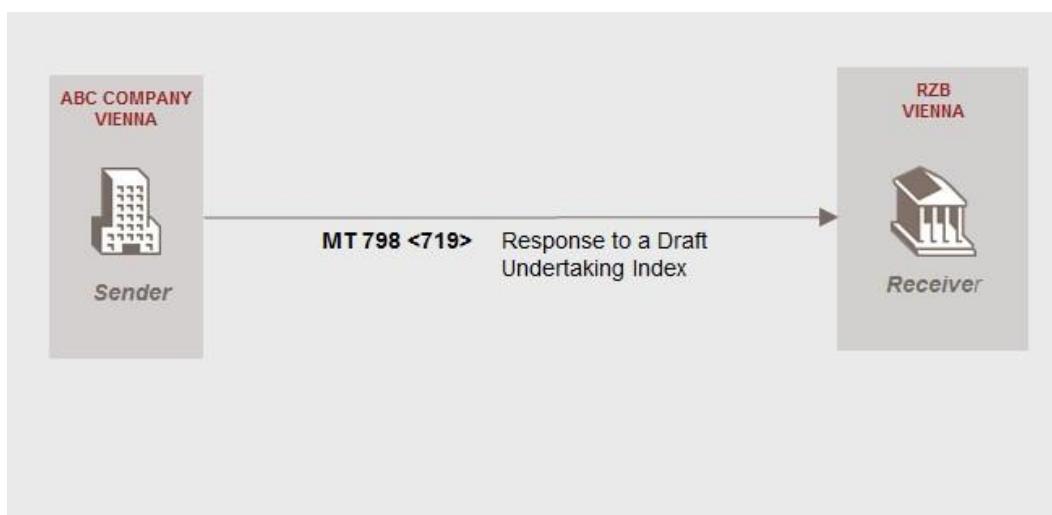
### Narrative

ABC Company, Kaeerntnerstrasse 3, Vienna, imports beer from Amdam Company, PO Box 123, Amsterdam, under a documentary credit.

ABC Co.'s bank is RZB, Vienna.

RZB has provided a Draft LC

ABC company replies that Draft (version 02 sent by bank) is Approved for issuance



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;719&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ABCOBEB3
Message Type	798
Receiver	RZBAATWW
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:B09290104112078T
Sub-message type	:12:719
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21A:7890125 :21T:7890125 :21P:RZB765987 :21S:RZB765987 :13E:202001151218 :12K:02 :25G:ACCP

## 2.4.2 Request for Cancellation

### Scope

The Request for Cancellation is sent by the corporate to its bank to request the cancellation of the referenced SWIFT message. It comprises one MT 798 message.

### Usage

The Request for Cancellation is sent by a corporate customer to a financial institution. It is not intended for the cancellation of an issued documentary credit (MT 700) or an issued Guarantee / Standby LC (MT 760), where the corresponding request for amendment messages MT 798<772 + 707> or MT 798<763 + 767> must be used.

A single set (Index, Details, Extension) of MT 798 messages that is requested to be cancelled must be identified using the sub-message type of the Index message. A single MT 798 message in a set of messages cannot be cancelled or refused individually

A Request for Cancellation must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 797 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for corporate-to-bank exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

## MT 798<797> - Request for Cancellation Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;797&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;797&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 797.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;797&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
<b>No.</b>	<b>Tag</b>	<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Format</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines</b>
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<797> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number of the bank.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank. Or a fixed value of NONREF.
2.4	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the applicant / beneficiary. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.5	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.6	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.7	21	Original Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the MT 798 Transaction Reference Number (field 20) of the original MT 798 Index message requested to be cancelled.
2.8	11T	Original Message Sub-Message Type and Date	3!n (Type) 8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the MT 798 sub-message type and date/time of the original MT 798 Index message requested to be cancelled. GUID: Date/time must be the contents of field 13E of the message to be cancelled.
2.9	79	Narrative Description of the Original Message	35*50x	O	DEFN: This field contains a narrative description of the original message which will enable the Receiver to positively identify the message to be cancelled.

2.10	22D	Kind of Undertaking	4!c	M	DEFN: This field specifies the kind of undertaking. CODES: DOCR = DOCUMENTARY CREDIT DGAR = DEMAND GUARANTEE STLC = STANDBY LETTER OF CREDIT UNDK = UNDERTAKING (for example guarantee, surety)
2.11	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.12	26E	Number of Amendment	3n (Number)	O	DEFN: Sequence number of the requested amendment that has been cancelled or refused. GUID: this field may be used in case an amendment request message is requested to be cancelled, to specify the exact amendment number. Otherwise it should not be used
2.13	72Z	Corporate to Bank Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the recipient.
2.14	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name. CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute. GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.

2.15	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.16	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.17	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and receiving banks.

### Narrative

On 26th January 2020, Pumpen AG replies to the Extend or Pay Request they have received a day earlier from Avalbank AG in Frankfurt. They inform Avalbank AG, that they agree to extend the guarantee as requested by the beneficiary

On the same day, Pumpen AG requests to cancel this SWIFT message.

### Information Flow



### SWIFT Message

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;797&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
Sender	PUMPCORP
Message Type	798
Receiver	AVALDEFFXXX
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:XYZ998
Sub-message type	:12:797
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21P:ABC66578 :21S:ABC66578 :21A:XYZ999 :21T:XYZ999 :13E:202001261849 :21:AVL947564 :11T:778 202001261120 .22D:DGAR

## 2.4.3 Notification of Cancellation / Refusal

### Scope

The Notification of Cancellation / Refusal is sent to the corporate by a financial institution to notify the corporate that the referenced SWIFT message has been cancelled or refused. It comprises one MT 798 message.

### Usage

The Notification of Cancellation / Refusal is sent to a corporate customer by a financial institution. It is not intended to report the cancellation of an issued documentary credit (MT 700) or an issued guarantee (MT 760) where the corresponding notifications of amendment messages MT 798<773 + 707> or MT 798<764/787 + 767> must be used.

A single set (Index, Details, Extension) of MT 798 messages cancelled or refused must be identified using the sub-message type of the Index message. A single MT 798 message in a set of messages cannot be cancelled or refused individually.

A Notification of Cancellation / Refusal must comprise:

- One MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 741 and enveloping one index message. This message contains all the necessary data elements for bank-to-corporate exchange. There is no equivalent bank-to-bank message.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

**MT 798<741> - Notification of Cancellation / Refusal Index**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;741&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;741&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 741.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;741&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
<b>No.</b>	<b>Tag</b>	<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Format</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines</b>
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<741> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1/1.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a reference number which has been assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	20	Document Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number / Guarantee number / Standby LC number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the related reference number assigned by the applicant / beneficiary.
2.6	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.7	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.8	21	Original Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the MT 798 Transaction Reference Number (field 20) of the original MT 798 Index message that has been cancelled or refused.
2.9	11T	Original Message Sub-Message Type and Date	3!n (Type) 8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the MT 798 sub-message type and date/time of the original MT 798 Index message that has been cancelled or refused. GUID: Date/time must be the contents of field 13E of the message to be cancelled.

2.10	79	Narrative Description of the Original Message	35*50x	O	DEFN: This field contains a narrative description of the original message which will enable the Receiver to positively identify the message that has been cancelled or refused.
2.11	52a	Issuing Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.12	26E	Number of Amendment	3n (Number)	O	DEFN: Sequence number of the requested amendment that has been cancelled or refused.
2.13	22D	Kind of Undertaking	4!c	M	DEFN: This field specifies the kind of undertaking. CODES: DOCR = DOCUMENTARY CREDIT DGAR = DEMAND GUARANTEE STLC = STANDBY LETTER OF CREDIT UNDK = UNDERTAKING (for example guarantee, surety)
2.14	12E	Cancellation / Refusal Status	4!c	M	DEFN: This field specifies the status of the cancellation or refusal. CODES: CNCU = Referenced message cancelled following customer instruction CNBK = Referenced message cancelled at the discretion of the bank REFU = Referenced message processing refused by bank
2.15	49L	Reason for Cancellation / Refusal	50*65z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: Specifies the reason for the cancellation / refusal.
2.16	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.

2.17	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.18	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.19	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.20	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

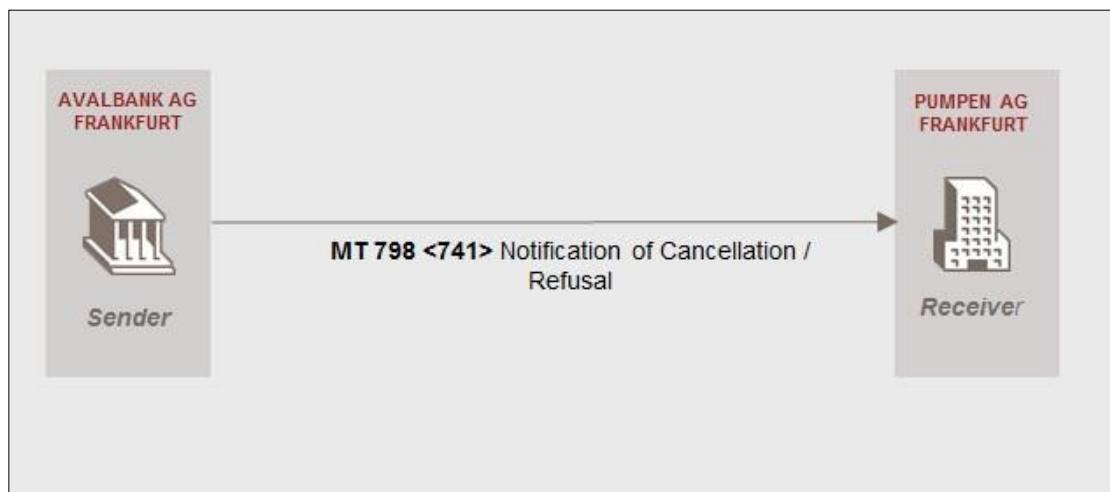
## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and receiving banks.

### Narrative

Upon receiving the MT 798<797> from Pumpen AG, Avalbank AG sends a refusal response to inform their corporate that they have already extended the guarantee.

### Information Flow



### SWIFT Message

SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 <741>	
Explanation	Format
Sender	AVALDEFFXXX
Message Type	798
Receiver	PUMPCORP
Message Text	
Transaction reference number	:20:AVL947598
Sub-message type	:12:741
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/1 :21P:AVL947598-01 :21S:AVL947598-01 :13E:202001271030 :21:XYZ998 :11T:797 202001261120 :22D:DGAR :12E:REFU :49L:We have already sent a SWIFT message to extend the mentioned guarantee based on your response to us on 26Jan2020.

## 2.4.4 Notification of Settlement of Charges

### Scope

The Notification of Settlement of Charges is sent to the corporate (applicant or beneficiary) by its bank and comprises two MT 798 messages. They are used to notify the corporate of bank charges, interest or other adjustments which have been debited or credited to the owner's account. These charges are related to one instrument. This message may be used in addition to, or as an alternative to, the respective Settlement of Payment and Charges messages for Guarantees / Standby LCs and Documentary Credits.

### Usage

A Notification of Settlement of Charges must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 793 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 790 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 790 and enveloping one MT 790 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 790 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Each MT 798 messages for a single Notification of Settlement of Charges must be identified with the same Bank Reference Number, specified as field 21P, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

## MT 798<793> - Notification of Settlement of Charges Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;793&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;793&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 793.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;793&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
<b>No.</b>	<b>Tag</b>	<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Format</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines</b>
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<793> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, i.e. 1/2.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number / Undertaking number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the related reference number assigned by the applicant/beneficiary.
2.6	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.7	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit / Guarantee / Standby LC as being issued.
2.8	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.
2.9	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.

2.10	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name, for ancillary documentation / information.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul>
2.11	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.12	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.13	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<790> - Notification of Settlement of Charges Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message. GUID: For MT 798<790> this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension). RULE: For MT 798<790> the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 790.
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <u>[n*78z][n*145z]</u> l (Text)	M	DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver. RULE: For MT 798<790> the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 790]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;790&gt; The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, i.e. 1/2.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 790 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
2.3		<b>MT 790 Message</b>		M	<b>MT 790</b> message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)

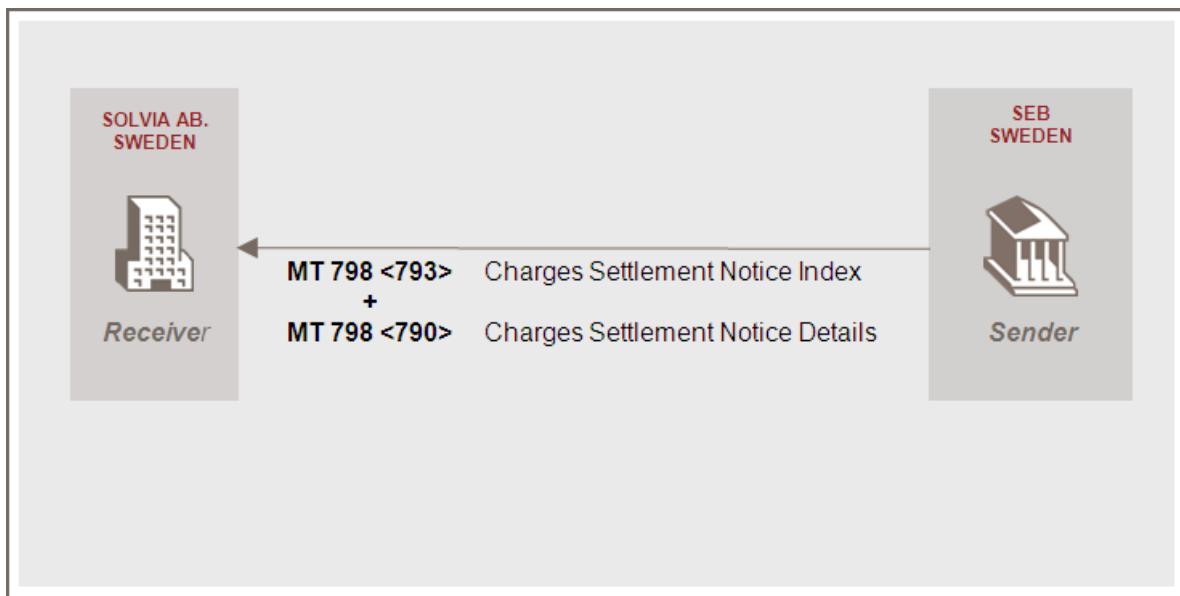
## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

On 15 June 2020, Solvia AB., Upsala, Sweden, an importer, received notification from their issuing bank, SEB, confirming the amount of the commission that would be charged by SEB's nominated bank, Bank of China, with whom they hold a USD account for letter of credit settlement.

### Information Flow



**SWIFT Messages**

<b>SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 &lt;793&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:MN6788903
Sub-message type	:12:793
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21P:657844401-123 :21S:657844401 :20:DC.IMP6516/6800 :21A:LC56678 :31C:200228 :13E:202006151825

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;790&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:MN6788904
Sub-message type	:12:790
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:657844401-123 :20:12MN-T765 :21:DC.IMP6516/6800 :25:34891345 :32D:200615USD215, :71B:CHARGES FOR PAYMENT OF LC DC.IMP6555/6800 ISSUED 28 FEBRUARY 2020 IN FAVOUR OF WANG SEMICONDUCTORS, SHANGHAI, CHINA

## 2.4.5 Request for Settlement of Charges

### Scope

The Request for Settlement of Charges is sent to the corporate (applicant or beneficiary) by its bank and comprises two MT 798 messages. They are used to request the payment of charges, interest and/or other expenses which are previously unknown to the corporate. These charges are related to one instrument.

If a more specific message (than this common group message) exists for the settlement, it must be used.

### Usage

A Request for Settlement of Charges must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 794 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 791 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- The second MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 791 and enveloping one MT 791 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 791 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

For clarity, this MT 798 flow may be used with a pre-existing MT 791 received by the sender of the MT 798 flow, and it may also be used without a pre-existing MT 791, in this case, the sender uses the MT 791 as a template to specify charges to the corporate, the applicant or beneficiary.

Each MT 798 messages for a single Request for Settlement of Charges must be identified with the same Bank Reference Number, specified as field 21P, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

## MT 798<794> - Request for Settlement of Charges Index

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;794&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;794&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 794.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;794&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

Section 2 – Field 77E Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<794> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, i.e. 1/2.
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.4	20	Undertaking Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the documentary credit number / Undertaking number assigned by the issuing bank.
2.5	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number assigned by the applicant/beneficiary.
2.6	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.7	31C	Date of Issue	6!n (Date)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the date on which the issuing bank considers the documentary credit / Guarantee / Standby LC as being issued.
2.8	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which this message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM. GUID: This field serves as a timestamp for audit and/or tracking purposes. It should not be used other purposes, for example to establish a timestamp on a documentary presentation.
2.9	52a	Issuing Bank	A [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) D [/1!a][/34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the issuing bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.

2.10	29B	Issuing Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the issuing bank.
2.11	58a	Advising Bank	<b>A</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code) <b>D</b> [/1!a]/[34x] (Party Identifier) 4*35x (Name & Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the advising bank. RULE: When specified in option A, the identifier code must be the SWIFT BIC8 or BIC11 for the bank.
2.12	29D	Advising Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the advising bank.
2.13	32B	Amount	3!a15d (Currency)(Amount)	O	DEFN: This field contains the currency code and amount of the documentary credit / Guarantee / Standby LC.
2.14	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the corporate.
2.15	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name, for ancillary documentation / information.  CODES: FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct FAXT = Fax transfer EMAL = Email transfer MAIL = Postal delivery COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS) HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel) OTHR = Other delivery channel
2.16	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer  CODES: BICC = BIC OTHR = Other  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
2.17	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.  RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.

2.18	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel. RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.
------	-----	----------------------	-------------------------------------	---	--

## MT 798<791> - Request for Settlement of Charges Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message. GUID: For MT 798<791> this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension). RULE: For MT 798<791> the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 791.
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <u>[n*78z][n*145z]</u> 1 (Text)	M	DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver. RULE: For MT 798<791> the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 791]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;791&gt; The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, i.e. 1/2.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 791 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the bank.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
2.3		<b>MT 791 Message</b>		M	<b>MT 791</b> message contents. (Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)

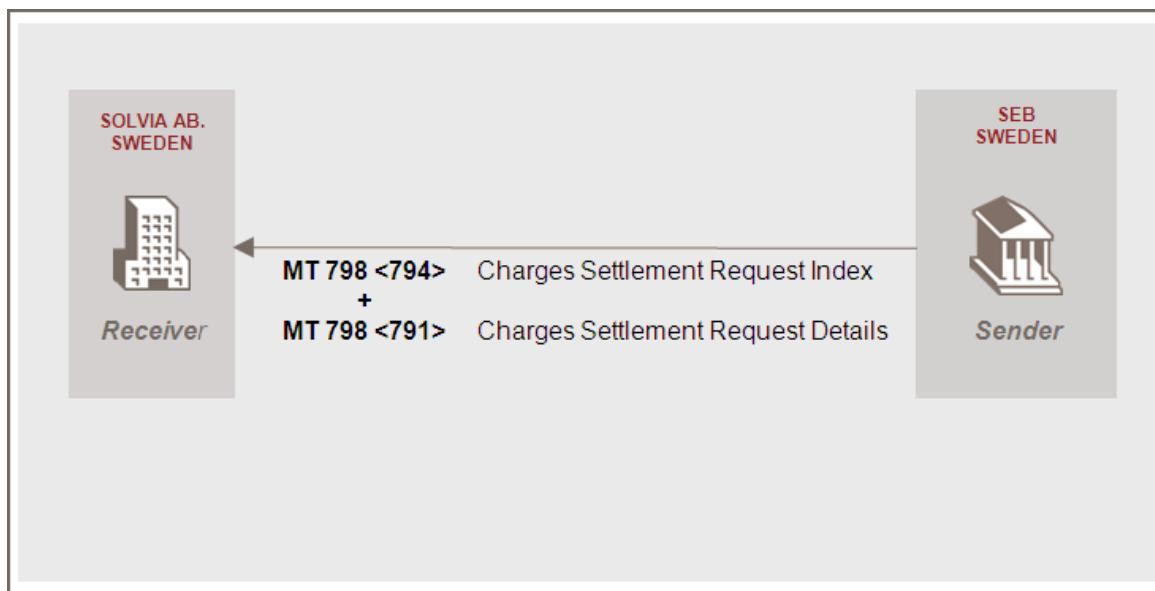
## Business Example

Please note that for the following example, the assumption is that appropriate agreements have been put in place between the different customer parties and the receiving banks to execute the trade message exchange.

### Narrative

On 15 July 2020, Solvia AB., Upsala, Sweden, an importer, received notification from their issuing bank, SEB, of a request for payment by SEB of additional courier charges by SEB's nominated bank, Bank of China, with whom SEB holds a USD account for letter of credit settlement.

### Information Flow



### SWIFT Messages

SWIFT Message – 1 MT 798 <794>	
Explanation	Format
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORG3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:MN6788903
Sub-message type	:12:794
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:1/2 :21P:657844966-111 :21S:657844966 :20:DC.IMP6555/6933 :31C:200215 :13E:202007151433

<b>SWIFT Message – 2 MT 798 &lt;791&gt;</b>	
<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Format</b>
<b>Header</b>	
Sender	ESSESESS
Message Type	798
Receiver	SOLCORP3
<b>Message text</b>	
Transaction reference number	:20:MN6788904
Sub-message type	:12:791
Proprietary message	:77E: :27A:2/2 :21P:657844966-111 :20:12MN-T765 :21:DC.IMP6555/6933 :32B:USD17, :71B:/POST/

## 2.4.6 Free Format Message - Corporate-to-Bank

### Scope

The Free Format Message is sent by the corporate to its bank and comprises two MT 798 messages.

The message may be used to send information for which another message type is not applicable.

### Usage

A Free Format Message must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 788 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 799 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- Followed by one or more (up to a maximum of 8) MT 798 messages identified with a sub-message type of 799, each enveloping one MT 799 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 799 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Each MT 798 messages for a single Free Format Message must be identified with the same Customer Reference Number, specified as field 21A, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798, in both the index and details messages.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

**MT 798<788> - Free Format Message - Corporate-to-Bank Index**

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;788&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;788&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 788.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;788&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<788> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, i.e. 1/2.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number of the bank.
2.5	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank. RULE: if the message relates to a specific undertaking, the undertaking number (for example, Documentary Credit Number or Guarantee Number) must be input in this field.
2.6	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.7	29A	Customer Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the corporate.
2.8	72Z	Corporate to Bank Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the recipient.

2.9	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.10	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.11	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.12	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<799> - Free Format Message - Corporate-to-Bank Details

Section 1 - MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;799&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the corporate, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;799&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 799.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;799&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 799]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;799&gt; the message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798&lt;799&gt; in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798&lt;799&gt;, e.g., 2/4, 3/4, 4/4, or 2/5, 3/5, 4/5, 5/5.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 799 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 799 Message Reference Guide.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
		<b>MT 799 message</b>			<p>MT 799 message contents.(Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Common Group Messages)</p> <p><i>Fields listed here below for convenience.</i></p>
2.3	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number of the bank.
2.4	21	Related Reference Number	16x	O	<p>DEFN: This field contains a reference number to the related message.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;799&gt; This field is not used.</p>
2.5	79	Narrative	35*50x (Narrative)	M	<p>DEFN: This field contains the free format message.</p> <p>NOTE: This field may be repeated. In total, the MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters.</p>

## 2.4.7 Free Format Message - Bank-to-Corporate

### Scope

The Free Format Message is sent by the bank to its corporate and comprises two MT 798 messages.

The message may be used to send information for which another message type is not applicable.

### Usage

A Free Format Message must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 789 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 799 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- Followed by one or more (up to a maximum of 8) MT 798 messages identified with a sub-message type of 799, each enveloping one MT 799 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 799 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Each MT 798 messages for a single Free Format Message must be identified with the same Bank Reference Number, specified as field 21P (Bank Reference Number) in both the index and details messages. Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

**MT 798<789> - Free Format Message - Bank-to-Corporate Index**

Section 1 – MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;789&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;789&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 789.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] l (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;789&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
<b>No.</b>	<b>Tag</b>	<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Format</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines</b>
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<789> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, i.e. 1/2.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number of the bank RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.5	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank. RULE: if the message relates to a specific undertaking, the undertaking number (for example, Documentary Credit Number or Guarantee Number) must be input in this field.
2.6	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.7	29B	Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the bank.
2.8	72Z	Bank to Corporate Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the recipient.

2.9	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.10	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.11	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.12	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<799> - Free Format Message - Bank-to-Corporate Details

Section 1 – MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;799&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;799&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 799.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) [n*78z][n*145z] l (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;799&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 799]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;799&gt; the message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798&lt;799&gt; in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798&lt;799&gt;, e.g., 2/4, 3/4, 4/4, or 2/5, 3/5, 4/5, 5/5.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 799 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
		<b>MT 799 message</b>			MT 799 message contents.(Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Common Group Messages)

## 2.4.8 Ancillary Message – Corporate-to-Bank

### Scope

The Ancillary Message is sent by the corporate to its bank and comprises two MT 798 messages.

The message may be used to send information for which another message type is not applicable. It should be used instead of the Free Format message (MT 799) as much as possible.

### Usage

An Ancillary Message must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 726 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 759 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- Followed by one or more (up to a maximum of 8) MT 798 messages identified with a sub-message type of 759, each enveloping one MT 759 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 759 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Each MT 798 messages for a single Ancillary Message must be identified with the same Customer Reference specified as field 21A (Customer Reference Number) in the index message or field 20 (Transaction Reference Number) in the details message, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

## MT 798<726> - Ancillary Message – Corporate-to-bank Index

Section 1 – MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;726&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;726&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 726.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;726&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<726> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, i.e. 1/2.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer or a fixed value of NONREF (in cases where no reference is available). RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number of the bank
2.5	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.6	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format: HHMM.
2.7	29A	Customer Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the bank.
2.8	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the recipient.

2.9	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.10	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.11	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.12	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<759> - Ancillary Message - Details

Section 1 – MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;759&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;759&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 759.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;759&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 759]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;799&gt; the message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798&lt;799&gt; in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798&lt;799&gt;, e.g., 2/4, 3/4, 4/4, or 2/5, 3/5, 4/5, 5/5.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 799 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference number which has been assigned by the customer or a fixed value of NONREF (in cases where no reference is available).</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21A is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
2.3		<b>MT 759 message</b>			<p>MT 759 message contents.(Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)</p> <p>Fields listed here below for convenience.</p>
2.4	27	Sequence of Total	1!n/1!n	M	DEFN: This field specifies the number of this message in the series of messages sent, and the total number of messages in the series.
2.5	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a unique and unambiguous identifier for the message.
2.6	21	Related Reference Number	16x	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a reference number which is meaningful to the Receiver, for example, the reference number of a previously sent acknowledgement.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;759&gt; This field is not used.</p>

2.7	22D	Form of Undertaking	4!c	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the type of instrument.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DGAR = Demand guarantee</li> <li>DOCR Documentary Credit</li> <li>STBY = Standby letter of credit</li> <li>UNDK = undertaking (for example, guarantee, surety)</li> </ul>
2.8	23	Undertaking Number	16x	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the unique and unambiguous undertaking identifier assigned by the issuer.</p> <p>RULE: If the message relates to a specific undertaking, the undertaking number (for example, Documentary Credit Number or Guarantee Number) must be input in this field.</p>
2.9	52a	Issuer	Option A [/1!a][/34x] 4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Party Identifier) (Identifier Code) Option D [/1!a][/34x] 4*35x (Party Identifier) (Name and Address)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the party that issues the undertaking (or counter-undertaking).

2.10	23H	Function of Message	8!c	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the type of request or function of the message.</p> <p>Function must contain one of the following codes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CLSVOPEN Opening of client service call by Trade Operations</li> <li>CLSVCLOS Closing of client service call by Trade Operations</li> <li>FRAUDMSG Advice of a fraud attempt</li> <li>GENINFAD General information advice</li> <li>ISSAMEND Amendment of a free-form undertaking such as a dependent guarantee</li> <li>ISSUANCE Issue of a free-form undertaking such as a dependent guarantee</li> <li>OTHERFNC Other request</li> <li>PREDENOT Pre debit notification</li> <li>REIMBURS Request related to a reimbursement</li> <li>REQAMEND Request to amend an undertaking</li> <li>REQFINAN Financing request</li> <li>REQISSUE Request to issue an undertaking</li> <li>TRANSFER Transfer of a undertaking</li> </ul>
2.11	45D	Narrative	150*65z (Narrative)	M	<p>DEFN: Details of the request or information.</p> <p>NOTE: This field may be repeated. In total, the MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters.</p>
2.12	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name or reference.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;759&gt; this field is not used.</p>

## MT 759 Network Validated Rules

**C1** If field 23H contains ISSUANCE, REQISSUE, REQAMEND or ISSAMEND, then field 22D must contain UNDK and if field 23H contains TRANSFER, then field 22D must contain DGAR, STBY, or UNDK (Error code(s): D87).

## 2.4.9 Ancillary Message – Bank-to-Corporate

### Scope

The Ancillary Message is sent by the bank to the corporate and comprises two MT 798 messages.

The message may be used to send information for which another message type is not applicable. It should be used instead of the Free Format message (MT 799) as much as possible.

### Usage

An Ancillary Message must comprise:

- The first MT 798 message identified with a sub-message type of 725 and enveloping one index message. This message contains additional data not covered in the MT 759 message, specific to the corporate-to-bank exchange.
- Followed by one or more (up to a maximum of 8) MT 798 messages identified with a sub-message type of 759, each enveloping one MT 759 message. The existing bank-to-bank MT 759 message specification is used, without technical change, but with the implementation governed by a set of additional usage guidelines as detailed in this document. These guidelines may override usage conventions that are specific to bank-to-bank implementation usage and may provide additional usage conventions to enable corporate-to-bank implementation.

Each MT 798 messages for a single Ancillary Message must be identified with the same Bank Reference specified as field 21P (Bank Reference Number) in the index message or field 20 (Transaction Reference Number) in the details message, the second field encapsulated by field 77E in the MT 798.

Each MT 798 message must not exceed 10,000 characters, further the size of field 77E (Proprietary Message) must not exceed 9,800 characters.

## MT 798<725> - Ancillary Message Bank-to-Corporate - Index

Section 1 – MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;725&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;725&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 725.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	73z (Text) <del>[n*78z][n*145z]</del> 1 (Text)	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;725&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series. RULE: For MT 798<725> The message index number must have a fixed value of 1, i.e. 1/2.
2.2	21A	Customer Reference Number	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies the related reference number which has been assigned by the customer.
2.3	21T	Customer Business Reference	16x	O	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the customer.
2.4	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies the reference number of the bank. RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.
2.5	21S	Bank Business Reference	16x	M	DEFN: This field specifies a business reference assigned by the bank.
2.6	13E	Message Creation Date Time	8!n4!n (Date)(Time)	M	DEFN: Date and time at which the message was created. Date format YYYYMMDD. Time format:HHMM.
2.7	29B	Bank Contact	4*35x (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies the contact details of the bank.
2.8	72Z	Sender to Receiver Information	6*35z (Narrative)	O	DEFN: This field specifies additional information for the recipient.

2.9	23X	File Identification	4!c/65x (Code)(File Name or Reference)	O	<p>DEFN: This field identifies the type of delivery channel and associated file name.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FACT = SWIFTNet FileAct</li> <li>FAXT = Fax transfer</li> <li>EMAL = Email transfer</li> <li>MAIL = Postal delivery</li> <li>COUR = Courier delivery (e.g., FedEx, DHL, UPS)</li> <li>HOST = Host-to-Host (Proprietary bank channel)</li> <li>OTHR = Other delivery channel</li> </ul> <p>RULE: The file name should exclude any path attribute.</p> <p>GUID: The file name should be unique for a sender-recipient pair for an extended period to avoid instances of duplicate files.</p>
2.10	29S	Customer Identifier	4!c/35x (Code)(Party Identifier)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies a code to identify the customer.</p> <p>CODES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BICC = BIC</li> <li>OTHR = Other</li> </ul> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.11	29P	Processing Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the bank responsible for processing the transaction.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>
2.12	29U	Lead Bank Identifier	4!a2!a2!c[3!c] (Identifier Code)	O	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the BIC code to identify the lead bank that provides the customer interface or channel.</p> <p>RULE: Mandatory for transactions that are exchanged under the Lead Bank Model.</p>

## MT 798<759> - Ancillary Message Bank-to-Corporate - Details

Section 1 – MT 798 Structure					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
1.1	20	Transaction Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the reference assigned by the Sender to unambiguously identify the message.</p> <p>GUID: For MT 798&lt;759&gt; this field should be assigned a value by the bank, to allow the individual MT 798 transaction to be uniquely identified, typically comprising a sequence number that is incremented by 1 for each message generated by the bank to the same corporate.</p>
1.2	12	Sub-Message Type	3!n	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to specify the sub-message type number to allow a specific sub-message to be identified within the MT 798, e.g., 770 (LC ApplicationIndex), 700 (LC Application Details), 701 (LC Application Extension).</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;759&gt; the sub-message type must have a fixed value of 759.</p>
1.3	77E	Proprietary Message	<p>73z (Text)  <span style="color:red">[n*78z][n*145z]</span>  <span style="color:red">1 (Text)</span></p>	M	<p>DEFN: This field is used to convey the message contents in a format agreed to by the Sender and the Receiver.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;759&gt; the contents of this field are specified in Section 2 that follows below.</p>

<b>Section 2 – Field 77E Structure [MT 759]</b>					
No.	Tag	Field Name	Format	Status	Definition / Content / Additional Usage Rules/Guidelines
2.1	27A	Message Index/Total	1!n/1!n (Message Index)/(Total)	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the sequence number of this message in the series of MT 798 messages and the total number of MT 798 messages in the series.</p> <p>RULE: For MT 798&lt;759&gt; the message index number must start with a value of 2 for the first MT 798&lt;799&gt; in the series and be incremented by 1 for each subsequent MT 798&lt;759&gt;, e.g., 2/4, 3/4, 4/4, or 2/5, 3/5, 4/5, 5/5.</p> <p>NOTE: This field is not present in the MT 759 Message Reference Guide.</p>
2.2	21P	Bank Reference Number	16x	M	<p>DEFN: This field specifies the bank reference.</p> <p>RULE: It is required that in a single group (index, details, extensions) of MT 798, field 21P is identical, and different from the reference in other groups.</p>
2.3		<b>MT 759 message</b>			MT 759 message contents.(Refer The SWIFT User Handbook, Volume Standards Category 7, Documentary Credits and Guarantees/Standby Letters of Credit)

# Legal Notices

## Copyright

Swift © 2023. All rights reserved.

## Disclaimer

The information in this publication may change from time to time. You must always refer to the latest available version.

## Swift Standards Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Policy - End-User License Agreement

Swift Standards are licensed subject to the terms and conditions of the *Swift Standards IPR Policy - End-User License Agreement*, available at [www.swift.com](http://www.swift.com) > About Us > Legal > IPR Policies > Swift Standards IPR Policy.

## Translations

The English version of Swift documentation is the only official and binding version.

## Trademarks

Swift is the trade name of S.W.I.F.T. SC. The following are registered trademarks of Swift: Swift, the Swift logo, 3SKey, Innotribe, MyStandards, Sibos, SwiftNet, Swift Institute, the Standards Forum logo, SWIFT gpi with logo, the SWIFT gpi logo, and UETR. Other product, service, or company names in this publication are trade names, trademarks, or registered trademarks of their respective owners.